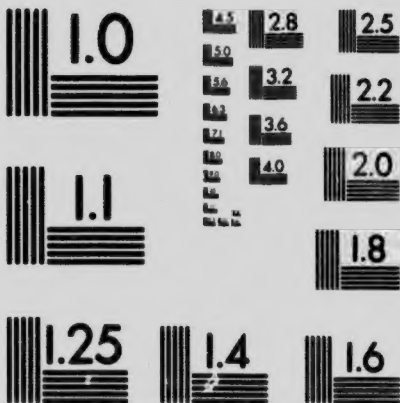
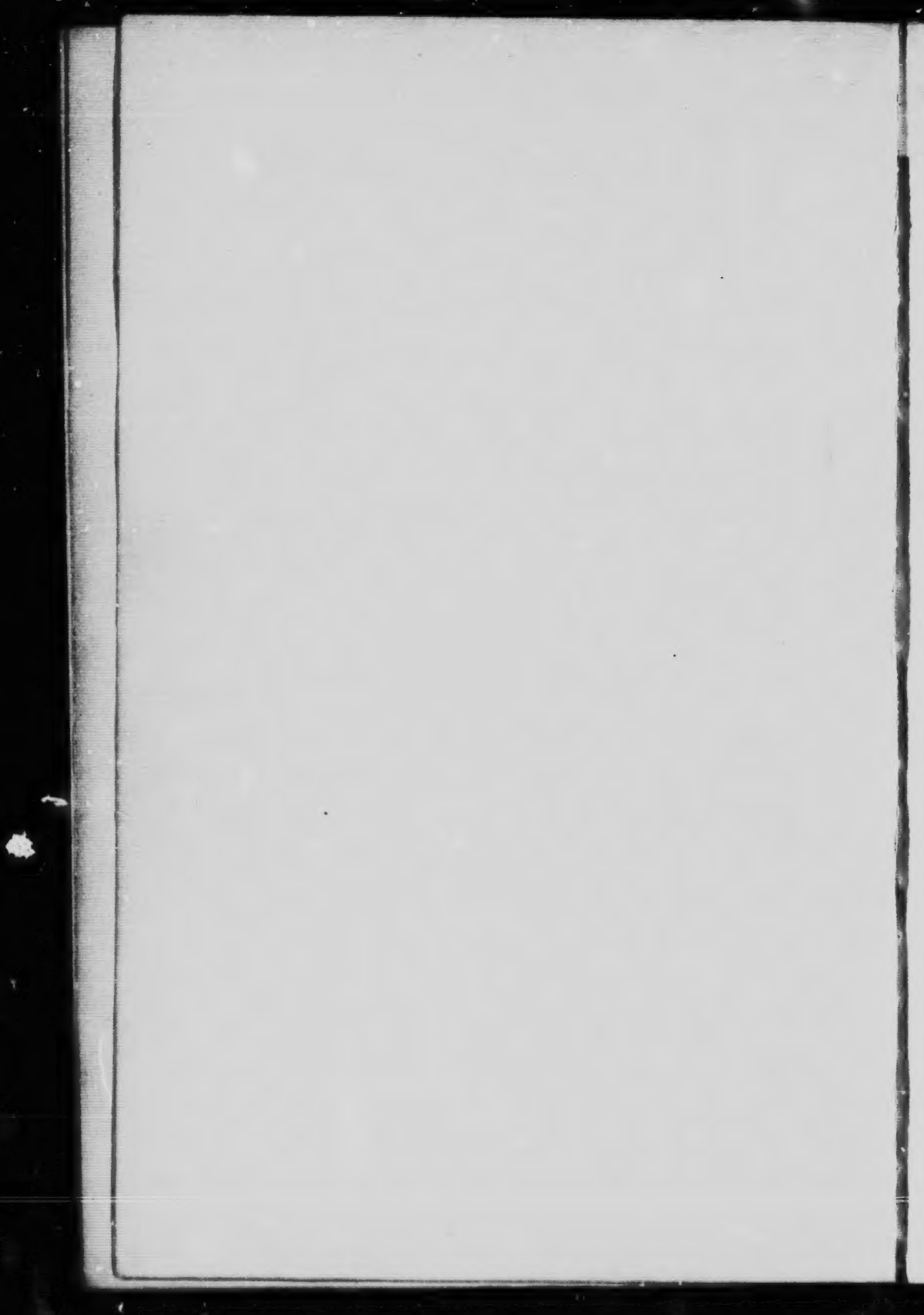




MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART
NATIONAL BUREAU OF STANDARDS
STANDARD REFERENCE MATERIAL 1010a
(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



Label
F6155.2

A SHORT

HANDBOOK OF LATIN

Accidence and Syntax

WITH

Examples and Exercises

AND

Notes on Latin Idiom

— BY —

J. FLETCHER,
Professor of Latin, University College.

UNIVERSITY PRESS
TORONTO
1912

120495
25/1/12

PA
2315
F5
cop. 2

PREFACE.

This book aims at presenting in brief form the essential facts of Latin Accidence and Syntax. Sections 1 to 30 of Part II cover the Latin syntax usually covered by the First Year of the General Course in the University, and Parts II and III that covered by the work of the Second Year. For use in the composition classes of the Third and Fourth Years of the General Course, some passages of simple narrative, for translation into Latin have been added.

For doing the Exercises a small English-Latin dictionary will be required.

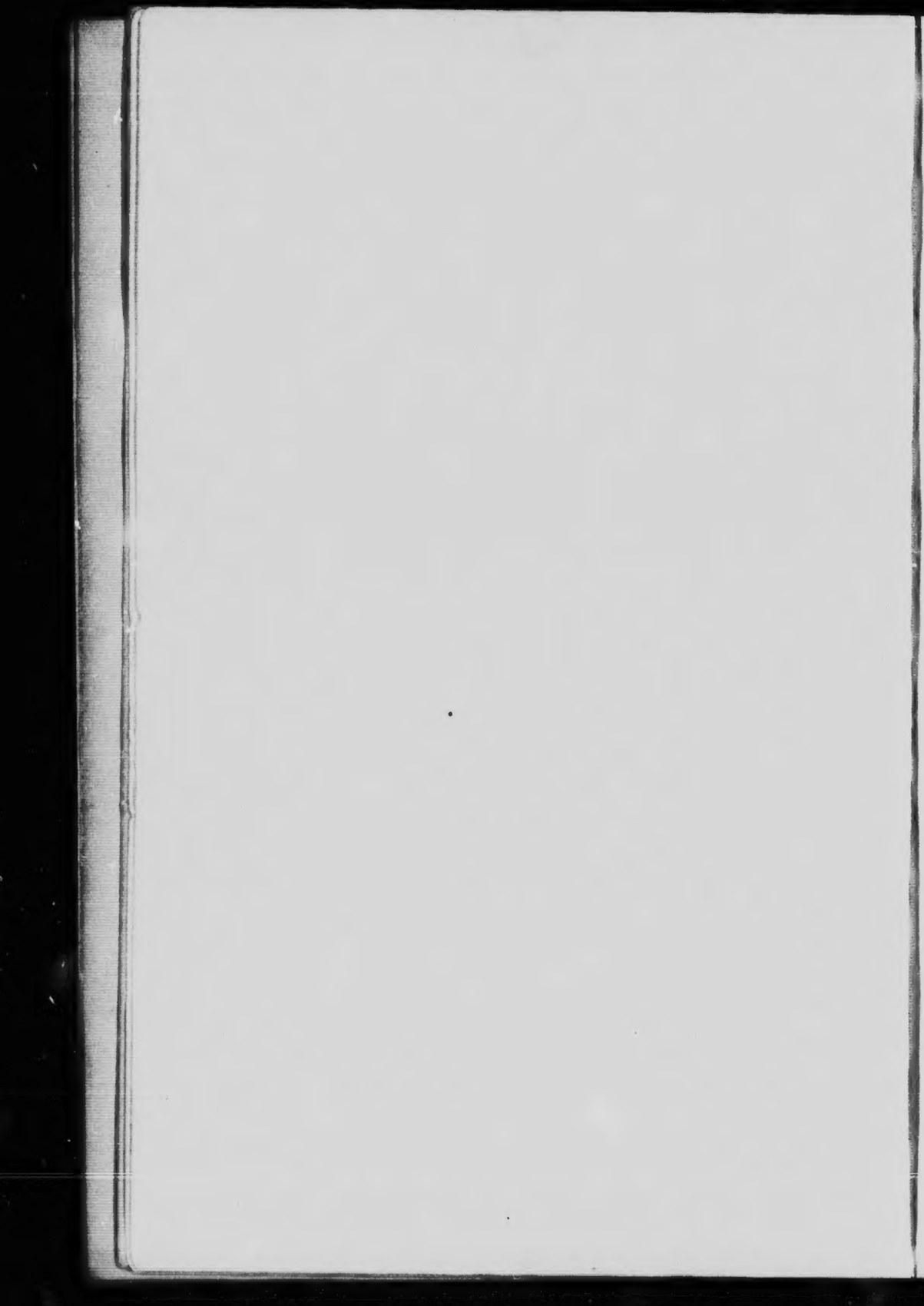


TABLE OF CONTENTS.

V

PART I—ACCIDENCE.

	PAGE
First Declension	1
Pronunciation	1
Second Declension	2
Third Declension	3
Fourth Declension	5
Fifth Declension	6
Rules of Latin Gender	6
Words that differ in Meaning in Sing. and Plural	7
Declension of Adjectives	8
Comparison of Adjectives	10
Adverbs	13
Numerals	14
Pronouns	16
Conjugation of Regular Verbs	19
Deponents	27
Verbs in -to of the III.	28
Sum. Possum	30
Preteritive Verbs	33
Volo, Nolo, Malo	34
Fero	36
Fio	38
Eo	39
List of Irregular Verbs	41
Preposition	46

PART II—SYNTAX.

§1. Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative	47
§2. The Genitive	49
§3. The Genitive continued	51
§4. Indirect Narration	53
§5. The Dative	55
§6. The Dative with Verbs	56
§7. The Ablative	59
§8. The Ablative continued.	61
§9. Abl. of Place. Locative	63
§10. Abl. with Verbs and Adjectives	65

	PAGE
§11. Interrogatives	66
§12. Relative Pronoun	68
§13. Imperative, Negative Imperative, and Subjunctive in Simple Sentences	71
§14. The Tenses	72
§15. Supine, Gerund, and Gerundive. Pass. Periphrastic	74
§16. Participle	77
§17. Ablative Absolute	79
§18. Future Participle. Act. Periphrastic	80
§19. Ut-Clause with Verbs of Asking	81
§20. Sequence of Tenses in Subordinate Clauses.	83
§21. Indirect Question	84
§22. Noun-Clauses continued	86
§23. Quominus and Quin.	88
§24. Verbs of Fearing. Modal Verbs	90
§25. Local and Temporal Clauses	91
§26. Syntax of Cum	94
§27. Final and Consecutive Clauses	96
§28. Causal and Concessive Clauses.	98
§29. Qui with Subjun.	100
§30. Conditional Clauses	102
§31. Classification of Conditional Sentences	104
§32. May. Can. Must. Ought	106
§33. The Reflexive Pronoun	109
§34. Quis, Quisquam, and Quivis	111
§35. The Infinitive.	114
§36. The Infinitive Continued. Verbs of Hoping.	116
§37. Comparative Clauses	118
§38. Exceptional Forms for the Conditional Sentence	121
§39. Indirect Narration	123
§40. The Conditional Sentence in Indirect Narration	126
§41. Indirect Narration Continued	128
§42. Deliberative Subjunctive in Indirect. Virtual Oblique. Assimilation.	130
§43. Special Idioms	132
§44. The Numeral	134
§45. The Days of the Month	136
§46. Roman Money	137
§47. Weights and Measures	139
§48. Resumé of Syntax Rules	140

PART III—LATIN AND ENGLISH IDIOM.

§1. Latin and English Idiom in the Use of Words. The Abstract Noun	147
§2. The Latin Verb for an English Noun.	149
§3. Other Substitutes for an English Noun: The Adjective. Concrete for Abstract	151
§4. Res and Res Publica	153
§5. Personification. Hendiadys	156
§6. The Use of Adjectives and Adverbs	158
§7. Latin Idiom Continued. Modern Political Terms	162
§8. Metaphor. English words with two or more Meanings. Words derived from Latin.	164
§9. Order, Emphasis, and Rhythm	166
§10. The Latin Period.	170
§11. Examples. Limit of Subordination, Detached Style.	174

PART IV.

Passages of Simple Narrative for Translation into Latin.	179
--	-----

HANDBOOK OF LATIN.

PART I—ACCIDENCE.

I.—FIRST DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Mens-a, a table.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Mens-ae, a table's, or of a table.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Mens-ae, to or for a table.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Mens-am, a table.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Mens-a, O table!</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Mens-a, from, with, in, or by a table.</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Mens-ae, tables.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Mens-arum, tables', or of tables.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Mens-is, to or for tables.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Mens-as, tables.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Mens-ae, O tables!</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Mens-is, from, with, in, or by tables.</i>

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION.

Words of two syllables have the Accent on the penult: as, *Ménsa* *bónus*.

Words of more than two syllables have the Accent on the penult, when the penult is *long*; otherwise on the antepenult: as, *Ductóres*, *amábam*, *mónui*.

English equivalents for the distinctive sounds of the Roman letters are:

Long vowels:

a like *a* in *father*.

e like *e* in *grey*.

i like *i* in *machine*.

o like *o* in *bone*.

u like *oo* in *root*.

Short vowels:

a like the first *a* in *aha*.

e like *e* in *met*.

i like *i* in *fit*.

o like *o* in *or*.

u like *u* in *full*.

Consonants:

c and g are hard, as in *come*.
and *go*.

i consonant like y in *yes*.
v like w in *wine*.

Diphthongs:

ae like ai in *aisle*.
oe like oi in *toil*.
ui almost like *we*.

au like ou in *house*.
eu (rare) like *eh-oo*.
ei (rare) like *ei* in *eight*.

II. SECOND DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

Nom. Serv-us, a slave.
Gen. Serv-i, of a slave.
Dat. Serv-o, to or for a slave.
Acc. Serv-um, a slave.
Voc. Serv-e, O slave!
Abl. Serv-o, from, etc., a slave.

Nom. Puer, a boy.
Gen. Puer-i, of a boy.
Dat. Puer-o, to or for a boy.
Acc. Puer-um, a boy.
Voc. Puer, O boy!
Abl. Puer-o, from, etc., a boy.

Nom. Magister, a master.
Gen. Magistr-i, of a master.
Dat. Magistr-o, to or for a master.
Acc. Magistr-um, a master.
Voc. Magister, O master!
Abl. Magistr-o, from, etc., a master.

PLURAL.

Serv-i, slaves.
Serv-orum, of slaves
Servi-s, to or for slaves.
Serv-os, slaves.
Serv-i, O slaves.
Serv-is, from, etc., slaves.

Puer-i, boys.
Puer-orum, of boys.
Puer-is, to or for boys.
Puer-os, boys.
Puer-i, O boys!
Puer-is, from, etc., boys.

Magistr-i, masters.
Magistr-orum, of masters.
Magistr-is, to or for masters.
Magistr-os, masters.
Magistr-i, O masters.
Magistr-is, from, etc., masters.

N.B.—The following nouns are declined like magister: Ager, *field*; aper, *a boar*; arbiter, *a judge*; auster, *south wind*; cancer, *a crab*; caper, *a goat*; culter, *a knife*; faber, *a smith*; liber, *a book*; minister, *a servant*.

N. V. & Acc. Mal-um, neut., an apple.

Gen. Mal-i, of an apple.

Dat. Mal-o, to an apple.

Abl. Mal-o, from, etc., an apple.

Mal-a, apples.

Mal-orum, of apples.

Mal-is, to apples.

Mal-is, from, etc., apples.

N.B.—Neuter nouns have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike in both numbers, and in the plural these cases end in-a.

<i>Nom.</i>	Deus, <i>a god.</i>	De-i (dii), di.
<i>Gen.</i>	De-i.	De-orum, deum.
<i>Dat.</i>	De-o.	Deis (diis), dis.
<i>Acc.</i>	De-um.	De-os.
<i>Voc.</i>	Deus.	De-i (dii), di.
<i>Abl.</i>	De-o.	De-is (diis), dis.
<i>Nom.</i>	Vir, <i>a man.</i>	Vir i.
<i>Gen.</i>	Vir i.	Vir orum.
<i>Dat.</i>	Vir o.	Vir is.
<i>Acc.</i>	Vir um.	Vir os.
<i>Voc.</i>	Vir.	Vir i.
<i>Abl.</i>	Vir o.	Vir is.

III. THIRD DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	Rex, <i>king</i>	Pes, <i>foot</i>	Corpus, <i>body</i>	Caput, <i>head</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Reg-is	Ped-is	Corpor-is	Capit-is
<i>Dat.</i>	Reg-i	Ped-i	Corpori	Capit-i
<i>Acc.</i>	Reg-em	Ped-em	Corpus	Caput
<i>Voc.</i>	Rex	Pes	Corpus	Caput
<i>Abl.</i>	Reg-e	Ped-e	Corpor-e	Capit-e

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	Reg-es	Ped-es	Corpor-a	Capit-a
<i>Gen.</i>	Reg-um	Ped-um	Corpor-um	Capit-um
<i>Dat.</i>	Reg-ibus	Ped-ibus	Corpor-ibus	Capit-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Reg-es	Ped-es	Corpor-a	Capit-a
<i>Voc.</i>	Reg-es	Ped-es	Corpor-a	Capit-a
<i>Abl.</i>	Reg-ibus	Ped-ibus	Corpor-ibus	Capit-ibus

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	Urbs, <i>city</i>	Amans, <i>lover</i>	Mare, <i>sea</i>	Animal
<i>Gen.</i>	Urbis	Amantis	Maris	Animalis
<i>Dat.</i>	Urbi	Amanti	Mari	Animali
<i>Acc.</i>	Urbem	Amantem	Mare	Animal
<i>Voc.</i>	Urbs	Amans	Mare	Animal
<i>Abl.</i>	Urbe	Amante (or i)	Mari	Animali

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	Urbes	Amantes	Maria	Animalia
<i>Gen.</i>	Urbium	Amantium	Marium	Animalium
<i>Dat.</i>	Urbibus	Amantibus	Maribus	Animalibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Urbes	Amantes	Maria	Animalia
<i>Voc.</i>	Urbes	Amantes	Maria	Animalia
<i>Abl.</i>	Urbibus	Amantibus	Maribus	Animalibus

N.B.—Nouns in “s” preceded by a consonant take the Gen. Plur. in *ium*. The Pres. part. also takes the Abl. Sing. in “i,” unless in the Abl. Absolute: as, *Tullo regnante, in the reign of Tullus*. Nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, take the Abl. Sing. in *-i*, the Nom. and Acc Plur. in *-ia*, and the Gen. Plur. in *-ium*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	Host-is, <i>enemy</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	Nubes, <i>cloud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Host-is	<i>Gen.</i>	Nub-is
<i>Dat.</i>	Host-i	<i>Dat.</i>	Nub-i
<i>Acc.</i>	Host-em	<i>Acc.</i>	Nub-em
<i>Voc.</i>	Host-is	<i>Voc.</i>	Nub-es
<i>Abl.</i>	Host-e	<i>Abl.</i>	Nub-e

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	Host-es	Nub-es
<i>Gen.</i>	Host-ium	Nub-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	Host-ibus	Nub-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Host-es (-is)	Nub-es
<i>Voc.</i>	Host-es	Nub-es
<i>Abl.</i>	Host-ibus	Nub-ibus

N.B.—Nouns of two syllables in *-is* or *-es* (*-i* stems) have the Gen. Plur. in *-ium* and the Acc. Plur. often in *-is*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> Bos, <i>ox</i>	Bov-es	V-is, <i>force</i>	Vir-es
	{ Bov-um		
<i>Gen.</i> Bov-is	{ Bo-um	V-is	Vir-ium

<i>Dat.</i>	Bov-i	{ Bo-bus Bu-bus	V-i	Vir-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Bov-em	Bov-es	V-im	Vir-es
<i>Voc.</i>	Bos	Bov-es	V-is	Vir-es
<i>Abl.</i>	Bov-e	{ Bo-bus Bu-bus	V-i	Vir-ibus

N.B.—The Nom. and Gen. Sing. of the common nouns of the III. Decl. are easily learnt, and, when these cases are known, the declension is simple.—Thus:

SINGULAR			PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	Senex, <i>old man</i>	Iter, <i>route</i> , n. Senes	Itinera
<i>Gen.</i>	Senis	Itineris	Senum
<i>Dat.</i>	Seni	Itineri	Senibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Senem	Iter	Senes
<i>Voc.</i>	Senex	Iter	Senes
<i>Abl.</i>	Sene	Itinere	Senibus

Decline: Iupiter, Iovis; nix, nivis, *snow*; homo, hominis, *a man*; vox, vocis, *a voice*; onus, oneris, *a load*; laus, laudis, *praise*; rus, ruris, *the country*; flumen, fluminis, *river*; pars, partis, *part*; lex, legis, *law*.

IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL
<i>N. & Voc.</i>	Fruct-us, m., <i>fruit</i>	Fruct-us
<i>Gen.</i>	Fruct-us	Fruct-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	Fruct-ui	Fruct-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Fruct-um	Fruct-us
<i>Abl.</i>	Fruct-u	Fruct-ibus
<i>N. V. & Acc.</i>	Gen-u, n., <i>a knee</i>	Gen-ua,
<i>Gen.</i>	Gen-up	Gen-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	Gen-u	Gen-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	Gen-u	Gen-ibus

N.B.—Tribus, *a tribe*, ar . lacus, *a lake*, have *abus* not *-ibus* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur.; specus, *a cave*, and portus, *a port*, have both *-abus* and *-ibus*.

Domus, a house, is thus declined:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Dom-us	Dom-us
Gen.	Dom-us	Dom-orum (uum)
Dat.	Dom-ui (-o)	Dom-ibus
Acc.	Dom-um	Dom-os (-us)
Voc.	Dom-us	Dom-us
Abl.	Dom-o (-u)	Dom-ibus

V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL.
N. & Voc.	Di-es, m. or f., a day	Di-es, m.,
Gen.	Di-ei	Di-erum
Dat.	Di-ei	Di-ebus
Acc.	Di-em	Di-es
Abl.	Di-e	Di-ebus

VI. RULES OF LATIN GENDER.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns in -a of the first Decl. are Fem., except the names of males: as, *Magna silva, a great wood.* But: *Magnus poeta, a great poet.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns in -us and -er of the second Decl. are Masc. Those in -um are Neut.: as, *Longus hortus, a long garden; bonus puer, a good boy; multa bella, many wars.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Most nouns of the third Decl. ending in -er, -or, -os, -es (increasing in the genitive), -o (except -do, -go, -io), are Masc.: as, *Carcer Romanus, a Roman prison; honor magnus, a great honor; flos albus, a white flower; paries altus, a high wall; sermo Latinus, the Latin language.*

2. Most nouns of the third Decl. which end in -do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, -x, -es (not increasing in the genitive), -s (preceded by a consonant), -us (in words of more than one syllable), are Fem.: as, *Multitudo magna, a great multitude; imago cerea, a wax image; oratio longa, a long speech; aestas callida, a warm summer; avis rara,*

a rare bird.; laus parva, *little credit*; vox magna, *a loud voice*; clades nostra, *our defeat*; plebs Romana, *the Roman populace*; virtus divina, *heroic valor*.

3. Most nouns of the third Decl. which end in -c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n, ar, -ur, -us, -us (in words of one syllable), are Neut.: as, Lac album, *white milk*; poema longum, *a long poem*; caput suum, *his own head*; mare magnum, *a great sea*; animal ferum, *a wild animal*; limen altum, *a high threshold*; calcar acutum, *a sharp spur*; fulgur clarum, *a bright flash*; tempus antiquum, *ancient time*; ius magnum, *a great right*.

State the gender of the following:—

Navis, navis, *a ship*.

Nix, nivis, *snow*.

Litus, litoris, *a shore*.

Onus, oneris, *a load*.

Frigus, frigoris, *frost*.

Hiems, hiemis, *winter*.

Carmen, carminis, *a song*.

Radix, radices, *a root*.

Animal, animalis, *an animal*.

Mare, maris, *sea*.

Rus, ruris, *country*.

Turris, turris, *a tower*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns in -us of the fourth Decl. are Masc., those in -u are Neut.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth Decl. are Fem., except dies, *a day*, which is Masc. or Fem. in the Sing., but only Masc. in the Plur.

For exceptions to the Rules, see Latin Grammar.

VII. WORDS THAT DIFFER IN MEANING IN THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Aedes, *a temple*.

Auxilium, *help*

Castrum, *a fort*

Copia, *plenty*

Finis, *an end*

Gratia, *favor*

Impedimentum, *hindrance*

Littera, *a letter* (of the alphabet)

Ludus, *play*

Opem (acc), *help*

Opera, *labor*

Sal, *salt*

Aedes, *a house* (pl.).

Auxilia, *allied forces*.

Castra, *a camp*.

Copiae, *forces*.

Fines, *boundaries*.

Gratiae, *thanks*.

Impedimenta, *baggage*

Litterae, *epistle, literature*

Ludi, *public games*

Opes, *wealth*

Operae, *work-people*

Sales, *wit*.

VIII. ADJECTIVES.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives of three terminations in the Nominative, in -us, -a, -um, or -er, -a, -um, are declined like nouns of the First and Second Decl. Thus:—

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Bon-us	Bon-a	Bon-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Bon-i	Bon-ae	Bon-i
<i>Dat.</i>	Bon-o	Bon-ae	Bon-o
<i>Acc.</i>	Bon-um	Bon-am	Bon-um
<i>Voc.</i>	Bon-e	Bon-a	Bon-um
<i>Abl.</i>	Bon-o	Bon-a	Bon-o

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	Bon-i	Bon-ae	Bon-a
<i>Gen.</i>	Bon orum &c.	Bon arum &c.	Bon-orum &c.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	Aeger, <i>sick</i>	Aegr-a	Aegr-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Aegr-i &c.	Aegr-ae &c.	Aegr-i &c.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Tener, <i>tender</i>	Tener-a	Tener-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Tener-i &c.	Tener-ae &c.	Tener-i &c.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

Unus, *one*, is declined thus:—

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Un-us	Un-a	Un-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Un-ius	Un-ius	Un-ius
<i>Dat.</i>	Un-i	Un-i	Un-i
<i>Acc.</i>	Un-um	Un-am	Un-um
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	Un-o	Un-a	Un-o

Like *Unus* are declined: *Uter, utra, utrum, which of the two* (Gen. *utrius*); neuter, *neither of the two*; *alius, -a, -ud, another*; *nullus, -a, -um, no one*; *solus, alone*; *totus, whole*; *ullus, any*; *alter, era, -erum, the other*. The genitive of *alter* is *alterus*.

ADJECTIVES OF III DECLENSION.

Adjectives of three terminations in *-er, -is, -e* or of two terminations in *-is* and *-e*, are declined according to the III Decl. Thus:—

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Acer</i>	<i>Acr-is</i>	<i>Acr-e</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Acr-is</i>	<i>Acr-is</i>	<i>Acr-is</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acr-i</i>	<i>Acr-i</i>	<i>Acr-i</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Acr-em</i>	<i>Acr-em</i>	<i>Acr-e</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Acer</i>	<i>Acr-is</i>	<i>Acr-e</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Acr-i</i>	<i>Acr-i</i>	<i>Acr-i</i>

PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Acr-es</i>	<i>Acr-ia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Acr-ium</i>	<i>Acr-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acr-ibus</i>	<i>Acr-ibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Acr-es</i>	<i>Acr-ia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Acr-es</i>	<i>Acr-ia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Acr-ibus</i>	<i>Acr-ibus</i>

SINGULAR		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Mit-is</i>	<i>Mit-e</i>	<i>Mit-ia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Mit-is</i>	<i>Mit-is</i>	<i>Mit-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Mit-i</i>	<i>Mit-i</i>	<i>Mit-ibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Mit-em</i>	<i>Mit-e</i>	<i>Mit-ia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Mit-is</i>	<i>Mit-e</i>	<i>Mit-ia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Mit-i</i>	<i>Mit-i</i>	<i>Mit-ibus</i>

N.B.—All adjectives of three endings in the *Nom.* like *Acer*, and all adjectives of two endings in the *Nom.* like *Mitis*, have *Abl. Sing.* in *-i*; *Nom. Neut. Pl.* in *-ia*; *Gen. Pl.* in *ium*. But comparatives and

adjectives of one ending in Nom. have Abl. Sing. in *i* or *e*; comparatives, the Neuter in *-a*, and Gen. Pl. in *-um*. Adjectives of one termination, from Nom. in *x* or in *s* preceded by a consonant, like *Audax* or *Oriens*, have the Nom. Pl. in *-ia* and Gen. Pl. in *-ium*.

Adjectives of one termination are declined according to the III Decl. Thus:—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Audax	Audax	Audac-es	Audac-ia
<i>Gen.</i> Audac-is	Audac-is	Audac-ium	Audac-ium
<i>Dat.</i> Audac-i	Audac-i	Audac-ibus	Audac-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> Audac-em	Audax	Audac-es	Audac-ia
<i>Voc.</i> Audax	Audax	Audac-es	Audac-ia
<i>Abl.</i> Audac-i (e)	Audac-i (e)	Audac-ibus	Audac-ibus

Irregular Adjs. of the III Decl. are :

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. & Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Duo	Du-ae	Du-ae	Duo	Tres	Tr-ia
<i>Gen.</i> Du-orum	Du-arum	Du-arum	Du-orum	Tr-ium	Tr-ium
<i>Dat.</i> Du-obus	Du-abus	Du-abus	Du-obus	Tr-ibus	Tr-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> Du-os(duo)	Du-as	Du-as	Duo	Tres	Tr-ia
<i>Voc.</i> Duo	Du-ae	Du-ae	Duo	Tres	Tr-ia
<i>Abl.</i> Du-obus	Du-abus	Du-abus	Du-obus	Tr-ibus	Tr-ibus

Mille, a thousand, is in the Sing. indecl. In Pl: *Nom.* and *Acc.* *Millia*; *Gen.* *millium*; *Dat* and *Abl.* *millibus*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Most Adjs. are compared by means of the endings *-ior* (*Masc.* and *Fem.*), *-ius* (*Neut.*), for the comparative, and *-issimus* (*a*, *-um*) for the superlative: as, *Altus*, *high*; *altior*, *higher*; *altissimus*, *highest*; *gravis*, *heavy*, *gravior*, *gravissimus*.

The Comparative is declined thus:—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Mitior	Mitius	Mitior-es	Mitior-a

<i>Gen.</i>	Mitior-is	Mitior-is	Mitior-um	Mitior-um
<i>Dat.</i>	Mitior-i	Mitior-i	Mitior-ibus	Mitior-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Mitior-em	Mitius	Mitior-es	Mitior-a
<i>Voc.</i>	Mitior	Mitius	Mitior-es	Mitior-a
<i>Abl.</i>	Mitior-e(-i)	Mitior-e (-i)	Mitior-ibus	Mitior-ibus

The comparative *Plus, more*, is irregular:

SINGULAR		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> —	Plus	Plur-es	Plur-a
<i>Gen.</i> —	Plur-is	Plur-ium	Plur-ium
<i>Dat.</i> —	—	Plur-ibus	Plur-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> —	Plus	Plur-es	Plur-a
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	Plur-es	Plur-a
<i>Abl.</i> —	Plur-e	Plur-ibus	Plur-ibus

N.B.—Adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, usually form the comparative and superlative by means of the adverbs *magis, more*, and *maxime, most*, respectively: as,

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Idoneus, <i>fit</i>	Magis idoneus	Maxime idoneus
Dubius, <i>doubtful</i>	Magis dubius	Maxime dubius

But Adjs. in -quus, form the comparative and superlative regularly: as, *Antiquus, ancient*, *antiquior*, *antiquissimus*.

IRREGULAR COMPARSION.

1. Adjs. in -er have the superl. in -rimus: as,

Acer, <i>sharp</i>	Acrior	Acerrimus
Miser, <i>wretched</i>	Miserior	Miserrimus
Celer, <i>swift</i>	Celerior	Celerrimus
Pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	Pulchrior	Pulcherrimus
Niger, <i>black</i>	Nigrrior	Nigerrimus

Note.—*Vetus, veteris, old*, has no comparative, but has *veterrimus* in the superlative. *Maturus, ripe*, has both *maturrimus* and *maturrissimus*.

2. The following Adjs. in -ilis form their comparative regularly in -ior, but their superlative in -limus:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Facilis, <i>easy</i>	Facilior	Facillimus
Difficilis, <i>difficult</i>	Difficilior	Difficillimus
Similis, <i>similar, like</i>	Similior	Simillimus
Dissimilis, <i>unlike</i>	Dissimilior	Dissimillimus
Gracilis, <i>slender</i>	Gracilior	Gracillimus
Humilis, <i>low</i>	Humilior	Humillimus

3. Adjs. in -dicus, *saying*, -ficus, *doing*, or -volus, *willing*, form their comparative and superlative from the corresponding participle in -ens, as:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE.
Maledicus, <i>slanderous</i>	Maledicentior	Maledicentissimus
Munificus, <i>lavish</i>	Munificentior	Munificentissimus
Benevolus, <i>kind</i>	Benevolentior	Benevolentissimus

Note.—Egenus, *needy*, has egentior, egentissimus; and providus, *foreseeing*, has providentior, providentissimus.

4. The following Adjs. are irregular in their Comparison:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Bonus, <i>good</i>	Melior, <i>better</i>	Optimus, <i>best</i>
Malus, <i>bad</i>	Peior, <i>worse</i>	Pessimus, <i>worst</i>
Magnus, <i>great</i>	Maior, <i>greater</i>	Maximus, <i>greatest</i>
Parvus, <i>small</i>	Minor, <i>less</i>	Minimus, <i>least</i>
Multus, <i>much</i> ,	Plus, <i>more</i>	Plurimus, <i>most</i>
Dives, <i>rich</i>	Divitior, <i>richer</i>	Divitissimus, <i>richest</i>
Dis,	Ditior,	Ditissimus

5. The following Adjs. are irregular in the superlative:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Exterus, <i>outward</i>	Exterior	Extremus and Extimus
Inferus, <i>lower</i> ,	Inferior	Infimus and Imus
Superus, <i>higher</i>	Superior	Supremus and Summus
Posterus, <i>behind</i>	Posterior	Postremus & Postumus

Note.—Mons infimus is *the lowest mountain* (of a range); mons

imus, *the bottom of the mountain*. Supremus mons is, *the highest mountain* (of a group of mountains); summus mons, *the top of the mountain*.

6. Some Adjs. have no positive, as:—

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE.
—	Citerior, <i>hither</i>	Citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
—	Deterior, <i>worse</i>	Deterrimus, <i>worst</i>
—	Interior, <i>inner</i>	Intimus, <i>innermost</i>
—	Ocior, <i>swifter</i>	Ocissimus, <i>swiftest</i>
—	Prior, <i>former</i>	Primus, <i>first</i>
—	Propior, <i>nearer</i>	Proximus, <i>next, nearest</i>
—	Uterior, <i>farther</i>	Ultimus, <i>farthest, last</i>

From Senex (*an old man*) is formed, senior or natu maior, *older*, and natu maximus, *oldest*.

From Iuvenis, *a young man*, is formed iunior or natu minor, *younger*, and natu minimus, *youngest*.

IX. ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed from Adjs. of the II Decl. by changing -us or -er into -e; from Adjs. of the III Decl. by adding -ter or -iter to the last letter of the stem. Thus:—

Dignus (*worthy*), digne, *worthily*; pulcher (*beautiful*), pulchre, *beautifully*; ferox (*spirited*), ferociter, *in a spirited manner*.

The comparative ends in -ius and the superlative in -issime. Thus: Digne, dignius, dignissime. Ferociter, ferocius, ferocissime.

Some adverbs are formed irregularly from Adjs., as:—

ADJECTIVE.		ADVERBS.	
	POSITIVE.	COMPAR.	SUPERL.
Bonus, <i>good</i>	Bene, <i>well</i>	Melius	Optime
Malus, <i>bad</i>	Male, <i>badly</i>	Peius	Pessime
Multus, <i>much</i>	Multum,	Plus	Plurimum
Parvus, <i>small, little</i>	Parum, <i>little</i>	Minus	Minime
Magnus, <i>great</i>	Magnopere	Magis	Maxime

Some adverbs, not derived from Adjs. are compared, as:—

POSITIVE	COMPAR.	SUPERL.
Diu, <i>long</i>	Diutius	Diutissime
Saepe, <i>often</i>	Saepius	Saeplissime.

X. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Arabic Symbol.	Roman Symbol.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	NUMERAL ADVERBS.
1	I	unus, a. um, <i>one</i> .	primus, a. um, <i>first</i> .	singuli, ac, a. <i>one by one</i>	semel, <i>once</i> .
2	II	duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	secundus, a. um (or alter), <i>second</i>	binī, ae, a. <i>two by two</i>	bis, <i>twice</i>
3	III	tres, tria, <i>three</i> .	tertius, a. um, <i>third</i> .	terni or terni	ter
4	IV	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
5	V	quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies ¹
6	VI	sex	sextus	seni	sexiens
7	VII	septem	septimus	septeni	septiens
8	VIII	octi	octavus	octoni	octiens
9	IX	novem	nonus	noveni	noviens
10	X	decem	decimus	deni	deciens
11	XI	undecim	undecimus	undeni	undeciens
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni	duodeciens or
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredeciens
14	XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni deni	quattuordeciens
15	XV	quiddecim	quintus decimus	quini deni	quiddeciens
16	XVI	sedecim	sextus decimus	seni deni	sedeciens
17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	septeni deni	septendeciens
18	XVIII	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicensi	duodeviciens
19	XIX	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undevicensi	undeviciens
20	XX	viginti	vicesimus	vicensi	viciens
21	XXI	{ unus et viginti or	primus et vicesimus or }	vicensi singuli	{ semel et viciens or
22	XXII	{ viginti unus	vicesimus primus	duodevicensi	{ viciens semel
23	XXIII	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicensi	duodeviciens

¹ Another form of numeral adverbs in -ens is in -es: quinquens, seziens.

TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS—Continued.

Symbol. Arabic.	Roman Symbol.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRINCTIVES.	NUMERAL ADVERBS.
29	XXIX.	undetriginta	undetrigesimus	undetricensi	undetriciens
30	XXX.	triginta	tricesimus	tricensi	triciens
40	XL.	quadraginta	quadragessimus	quadrageni	quadragiens
50	L.	quinginta	quinquagesimus	quinquageni	quinquagens
60	LX.	sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexageni	sexagens
70	LXX.	septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuageni	septuagens
80	LXXX.	octoginta	octogesimus	octogeni	octogens
90	XC.	nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonageni	nonagens
100	C.	centum	centesimus	centeni	centiens
101	CI.	centum unus or	centesimus primus or	centeni et singuli or	centiens semel
200	CC.	centum et unus	ducesimus et primus	ducenteni	ducentiens
300	CCC.	trecenti, ac, a	trecentesimus	trecenteni	trecentiens
400	CCCC.	quadringenti, ac, a	quadringentesimus	quadringeni	quadringentiens
500	D. or IC.	quingenti, ac, a	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingentiens
600	DC.	sexcenti, ac, a	sexcentesimus	sexcenteni	sexcentiens
700	DCC.	septingenti, ac, a	septingentesimus	septingeni	septingentiens
800	DCCC.	octingenti, ac, a	octingentesimus	octingeni	octingentiens
900	DCCCC.	nongenti, ac, a	nongentesimus	nongeni	nongentiens
1,000	M. or CXC.	mille	millesimus	singula milia	miliens
2,000	MM.	duo milia	bis millesimus	duo milia	bis milliciens
3,000	CCC.	quinque milia	quinquies millesimus	quinque milia	quinquies milliciens
10,000	CCCC.	decem milia	decies millesimus	decem milia	decies milliciens
100,000	CCCCC.	centum milia	centies millesimus	centena milia	centies milliciens

XI. PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

Ego, *I*.Tu, *thou, you (sing)*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR	PLURAL.
Nom. Ego	Nos	Tu	Vos
Gen. Mei	Nostrum, nostri	Tui	Vestrum, vestri
Dat. Mihi	Nobis	Tibi	Vobis
Acc. Me	Nos	Te	Vos
Voc. —	—	Tu	Vos
Abl. Me	Nobis	Te	Vobis

Sui, *of himself*.

SINGULAR	PLURAL.
Gen. Sui	Sui
Dat. Sibi	Sibi
Acc. Se	Se
Abl. Se	Se

DEMONSTRATIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Hic, *this*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Hic	Haec	Hoc
Gen.	Huius	Huius	Huius
Dat.	Huic	Huic	Huic
Acc.	Hunc	Hanc	Hoc
Abl.	Hoc	Hac	Hoc

PLURAL.

Nom.	Hi	Haec
Gen.	Horum	Horum
Dat.	His	His
Acc.	Hos	Haec
Abl.	His	His

Ille, that

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Ille	Illa	Illud
<i>Gen.</i>	Illius	Illius	Illius
<i>Dat.</i>	Illi	Illi	Illi
<i>Acc.</i>	Illum	Illam	Illud
<i>Abl.</i>	Illo	Illa	Illo

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Illi	Illae	Illa
<i>Gen.</i>	Illorum	Illarum	Illorum
<i>Dat.</i>	Illis	Illis	Illis
<i>Acc.</i>	Illos	Illas	Illa
<i>Abl.</i>	Illis	Illis	Illis

N.B.—Like *Ille* are declined: *Ipse*, -a, um, *self*, and *Iste*, -a, -ud, *that of yours*.

Is, he, this, that

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Is	Ea	Id
<i>Gen.</i>	Eius	Eius	Eius
<i>Dat.</i>	Ei	Ei	Ei
<i>Acc.</i>	Eum	Eam	Id
<i>Abl.</i>	Eo	Ea	Eo

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Ei (ii)	Eae	Ea
<i>Gen.</i>	Eorum	Earum	Eorum
<i>Dat.</i>	Eis (iis)	Eis (iis)	Eis (iis)
<i>Acc.</i>	Eos	Eas	Ea
<i>Abl.</i>	Eis (iis)	Eis (iis)	Eis (iis)

Idem, the same.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Idem	Eadem	Idem
<i>Gen.</i>	Eiusdem	Eiusdem	Eiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	Eidem	Eidem	Eidem
<i>Acc.</i>	Eundem	Eandem	Idem
<i>Abl.</i>	Eodem	Eadem	Eodem

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	Eidem Iidem	Eaedem	Eaedem
<i>Gen.</i>	Eorundem	Earundem	Eorundem
<i>Dat.</i>	Eisdem Iisdem	Eisdem Iisdem	Eisdem Iisdem
<i>Acc.</i>	Eosdem	Easdem	Eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	Eisdem Iisdem	Eisdem Iisdem	Eisdem Iisdem

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

Qui, who

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Qui ✓	Quae ✓	Quod ✓
<i>Gen.</i>	Cuius	Cuius	Cuius
<i>Dat.</i>	Cui	Cui	Cui
<i>Acc.</i>	Quem	Quam	Quod
<i>Abl.</i>	Quo	Qua	Quo

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	Qui	Quae	Quae
<i>Gen.</i>	Quorum	Quarum	Quorum
<i>Dat.</i>	Quibus	Quibus	Quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Quos	Quas	Quae
<i>Abl.</i>	Quibus	Quibus	Quibus

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

Quis, who?

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Quis ✓	Quae ✓	Quid
<i>Gen.</i>	Cuius	Cuius	Cuius
<i>Dat.</i>	Cui	Cui	Cui
<i>Acc.</i>	Quem	Quam	Quid
<i>Abl.</i>	Quo	Qua	Quo

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	Qui	Quae	Quae
<i>Gen.</i>	Quorum	Quarum	Quorum
<i>Dat.</i>	Quibus	Quibus	Quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Quos	Quas	Quae
<i>Abl.</i>	Quibus	Quibus	Quibus

XII. REGULAR VERBS.

<i>Principal Parts</i>	1.	Conjugation:	Amo	Amare	Amavi	Amatum
	2.	"	Moneo	Monere	Monui	Monitum
	3.	"	Rego	Regere	Rexi	Rectum
	4.	"	Audio	Audire	Audiui	Auditum

ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am-o	Mon-eo	Reg-o	Aud-io
2. Am-as	Mon-es	Reg-is	Aud-is
3. Am-at	Mon-et	Reg-it	Aud-it

PLURAL.

1. Am-amus	Mon-emus	Reg-imus	Aud-imus
2. Am-atis	Mon-etis	Reg-itis	Aud-itis
3. Am-ant	Mon-ent	Reg-unt	Aud-iunt

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am-abam	Mon-ebam	Reg-e	Audi-ebam
2. Am-abas	Mon-ebas	Reg-el.	Audi-ebas
3. Am-abat	Mon-ebat	Reg-ebat	Audi-ebat

PLURAL.

1. Am-abamus	Mon-ebamus	Reg-ebamus	Audi-ebamus
2. Am abatis	Mon ebatis	Reg-ebatis	Audi-ebatis
3. Am abant	Mon-ebant	Reg-ebant	Audi-ebant

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. Am-abo	Mon-ebo	Reg-am	Audi-am
2. Am-abis	Mon-ebis	Reg-es	Audi-es
3. Am-abit	Mon-ebit	Reg-et	Audi-et

PLURAL.

1. Am-abimus	Mon-ebimus	Reg-emus	Audi-emus
2. Am-abitis	Mon-ebitis	Reg-etis	Audi-etis
3. Am-abunt	Mon-ebunt	Reg-ent	Audi-ent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Amav-i	Monu-i	Rex-i	Audiv-i
2. Amav-isti	Monu-isti	Rex-isti	Audiv-isti
3. Amav-it	Monu-it	Rex-it	Audiv-it

PLURAL.

1. Amav-imus	Monu-imus	Rex-imus	Audiv-imus
2. Amav-istis	Monu-istis	Rex-istis	Audiv-istis
3. { Amav-erunt	{ Monu-erunt	{ Rex-erunt	{ Audiv-erunt
{ Amav-ere	{ Monu-ere	{ Rex-ere	{ Audiv-ere

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Amav-eram	Monu-eram	Rex-eram	Audiv-eram
2. Amav-eras	Monu-eras	Rex-eras	Audiv-eras
3. Amav-erat	Monu-erat	Rex-erat	Audiv-erat

PLURAL.

1. Amav-eramus	Monu-eramus	Rex-eramus	Audiv-eramus
2. Amav-eratis	Monu-eratis	Rex-eratis	Audiv-eratis
3. Amav-erant	Monu-erant	Rex-erant	Audiv-erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Amav-ero	Monu-ero	Rex-ero	Audiv-ero
2. Amav-eris	Monu-eris	Rex-eris	Audiv-eris
3. Amav-erit	Monu-erit	Rex-erit	Audiv-erit

PLURAL.

1. Amav-erimus	Monu-erimus	Rex-erimus	Audiv-erimus
2. Amav-eritis	Monu-eritis	Rex-eritis	Audiv-eritis
3. Amav-erint	Monu-erint	Rex-erint	Audiv-erint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am-em	Mon-eam	Reg-am	Audi-am
2. Am-es	Mon-eas	Reg-as	Audi-as
3. Am-et	Mon-eat	Reg-at	Audi-at

PLURAL.

1. Am-emus	Mon-eamus	Reg-amus	Audi-amus
2. Am-etis	Mon-eatis	Reg-atis	Audi-atis
3. Am-ent	Mon-eant	Reg-ant	Audi-ant

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am-arem	Mon-erem	Reg-erem	Aud-irem
2. Am-ares	Mon-eres	Reg-eres	Aud-ires
3. Am-aret	Mon-eret	Reg-eret	Aud-iret

PLURAL.

1. Am-aremus	Mon-eremus	Reg-eremus	Aud-iremus
2. Am-aretis	Mon-eretis	Reg-eretis	Aud-iretis
3. Am-arent	Mon-erent	Reg-erent	Aud-irent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Amav-erim	Monu-erim	Rex-erim	Audiv-erim
2. Amav-eris	Monu-eris	Rex-eris	Audiv-eris
3. Amav-erit	Monu-erit	Rex-erit	Audiv-erit

PLURAL.

1. Amav-erimus	Monu-erimus	Rex-erimus	Audiv-erimus
2. Amav-eritis	Monu-eritis	Rex-eritis	Audiv-eritis
3. Amav-erint	Monu-erint	Rex-erint	Audiv-erint

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Amav-issem	Monu-issem	Rex-issem	Audiv-issem
2. Amav-isses	Monu-isses	Rex-isses	Audiv-isses
3. Amav-isset	Monu-isset	Rex-isset	Audiv-isset

PLURAL.

1. Amav-issemus	Monu-issemus	Rex-issemus	Audiv-issemus
2. Amav-issetis	Monu-issetis	Rex-issetis	Audiv-issetis
3. Amav-issent	Monu-issent	Rex-issent	Audiv-issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. Am a	Mon e	Reg e	Aud i
---------	-------	-------	-------

PLURAL.

2. Am ate	Mon ete	Reg ite	Aud ite
-----------	---------	---------	---------

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. Am ato	Mon eto	Reg ito	Aud ito
<i>you shall love</i>			
3. Am ato	Mon eto	Reg ito	Aud ito
<i>he shall love</i>			

PLURAL.

2. Am atote	Mon etote	Reg itote	Aud itote
<i>you shall love</i>			
3. Am anto	Mon ento	Reg unto	Aud iunto
<i>they shall love</i>			

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Ama re	Mone re	Rege re	Audi re
<i>Pe.f.</i> Amav isse	Monu isse	Rex isse	Audiv isse
<i>Fut.</i> Ama turus	Moni turus	Rec turus	Audi turus
esse	esse	esse	esse

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> Ama ns	Mone ns	Reg ens	Audi ens
<i>Fut.</i> Ama turus	Moni turus	Rec turus	Audi turus

SUPINE.

Ama tum	Moni tum	Rec tum	Audi tum
tu	tu	tu	tu

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> Ama ndi	Mone ndi	Rege ndi	Audi endi
<i>Dat.</i> Ama ndo	Mone ndo	Rege ndo	Audi endo
<i>Acc.</i> Ama ndum	Mone ndum	Rege ndum	Audi endum
<i>Abl.</i> Ama ndo	Mone ndo	Rege ndo	Audi endo

PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am or	Mone or	Reg or	Audi or
2. { Ama ris	{ Mone ris	{ Rege ris	{ Audi ris
{ Ama re	{ Mone re	{ Rege re	{ Audi re
3. Ama tur	Mone tur	Regi tur	Audi tur

PLURAL.

1. Ama mur	Mone mur	Regi mur	Audi mur
2. Ama mini	Mone mini	Regi mini	Audi mini
3. Ama ntur	Mone ntur	Regu ntur	Audi untur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama bar	Mone bar	Rege bar	Audi ebar
2. { Ama baris	{ Mone baris	{ Rege baris	{ Audi ebaris
{ Ama bare	{ Mone bare	{ Rege bare	{ Audi ebare
3. Ama batur	Mone batur	Rege batur	Audi ebatur

PLURAL.

1. Ama bamur	Mone bamur	Rege bamur	Audi ebamur
2. Ama bamini	Mone bamini	Rege bamini	Audi ebamini
3. Ama bantur	Mone bantur	Rege bantur	Audi ebantur

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama bor	Mone bor	Rege r	Audia r
2. { Ama beris	{ Mone beris	{ Rege ris	{ Audie ris
{ Ama bere	{ Mone bere	{ Rege re	{ Audie re
3. Ama bitur	Mone bitur	Rege tur	Audie tur

PLURAL.

1. Ama bimur	Mone bimur	Rege mur	Audie mur
2. Ama bimini	Mone bimini	Rege mini	Audie mini
3. Ama buntur	Mone buntur	Rege ntur	Audie ntur

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus sum	Moni tus sum	Rec tus sum	Audi tus sum
2. Ama tus es	Moni tus es	Rec tus es	Audi tus es
3. Ama tus est	Moni tus est	Rec tus est	Audi tus est

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti sumus	Moni ti sumus	Rec ti sumus	Audi ti sumus
2. Ama ti estis	Moni ti estis	Rec ti estis	Audi ti estis
3. Ama ti sunt	Moni ti sunt	Rec ti sunt	Audi ti sunt

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus eram	Moni tus eram	Rec tus eram	Audi tus eram
2. Ama tus eras	Moni tus eras	Rec tus eras	Audi tus eras
3. Ama tus erat	Moni tus erat	Rec tus erat	Audi tus erat

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti eramus	Moni ti eramus	Rec ti eramus	Audi ti eramus
2. Ama ti eratis	Moni ti eratis	Rec ti eratis	Audi ti eratis
3. Ama ti erant	Moni ti erant	Rec ti erant	Audi ti erant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus ero	Moni tus ero	Rec tus ero	Audi tus ero
2. Ama tus eris	Moni tus eris	Rec tus eris	Audi tus eris
3. Ama tus erit	Moni tus erit	Rec tus erit	Audi tus erit

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti erimus	Moni ti erimus	Rec ti erimus	Audi ti erimus
2. Ama ti eritis	Moni ti eritis	Rec ti eritis	Audi ti eritis
3. Ama ti erunt	Moni ti erunt	Rec ti erunt	Audi ti erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am er	Mone ar	Reg ar	Audi ar
2. { Am eris	{ Mone aris	{ Reg aris	{ Audi aris
{ Am ere	{ Mone are	{ Reg are	{ Audi are
3. Am etur	Mone atur	Reg atur	Audi atur

PLURAL.

1. Am emur	Mone amur	Reg amur	Audi amur
2. Am emini	Mone amini	Reg amini	Audi amini
3. Am entur	Mone antur	Reg antur	Audi antur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama rer	Mone rer	Rege rer	Audi rer
2. { Ama reris	{ Mone reris	{ Rege reris	{ Audi reris
{ Ama rere	{ Mone rere	{ Rege rere	{ Audi rere
3. Ama retur	Mone retur	Rege retur	Audi retur

PLURAL.

1. Ama remur	Mone remur	Rege remur	Audi remur
2. Ama remini	Mone remini	Rege remini	Audi remini
3. Ama rentur	Mone rentur	Rege rentur	Audi rentur

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus sim	Moni tus sim	Rec tus sim	Audi tus sim
2. Ama tus sis	Moni tus sis	Rec tus sis	Audi tus sis
3. Ama tus sit	Moni tus sit	Rec tus sit	Audi tus sit

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti simus	Moni ti simus	Rec ti simus	Audi ti simus
2. Ama ti sitis	Moni ti sitis	Rec ti sitis	Audi ti sitis
3. Ama ti sint	Moni ti sint	Rec ti sint	Audi ti sint

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus essem	Moni tus essem	Rec tus essem	Audi tus essem
2. Ama tus esses	Moni tus esses	Rec tus esses	Audi tus esses
3. Ama tus esset	Moni tus esset	Rec tus esset	Audi tus esset

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti essemus	Moni ti essemus	Rec ti essemus	Audi ti essemus
2. Ama ti essetis	Moni ti essetis	Rec ti essetis	Audi ti essetis
3. Ama ti essent	Moni ti essent	Rec ti essent	Audi ti essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. Am are	Mon ere	Reg ere	Aud ire
-----------	---------	---------	---------

PLURAL.

2. Am amini	Mon emini	Reg imini	Aud imini
-------------	-----------	-----------	-----------

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. Am ator	Mon etor	Reg itor	Aud itor
<i>you shall be loved</i>			
3. Am ator	Mon etor	Reg itor	Aud itor
<i>he shall be loved</i>			

PLURAL.

3. Am antor	Mon entor	Reg untor	Aud iuntor
<i>they shall be loved</i>			

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Am ari	Mon eri	Reg i	Audi ri
<i>Perf.</i> Ama tus esse	Moni tus esse	Rec tus esse	Audi tus esse
<i>Fut.</i> Ama tum iri	Moni tum iri	Rec tum iri	Audi tum iri

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i> Ama tus	Moni tus	Rec tus	Audi tus
<i>Fut.</i> Am andus	Mon endus	Reg endus	Audi endus

XIII. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

Principal Parts	1st Conj.	Miror, mirari, miratus sum, <i>wonder</i> .
	2nd Conj.	Vereor, vereri, veritus sum, <i>fear</i> .
	3rd Conj.	Sequor, sequi, secutus sum, <i>follow</i> .
	4th Conj.	Blandior, blandiri, blanditus sum, <i>flatter</i> .

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Pers.,	Miror	Vereor	Sequor	Blandior
2. "	Miraris, or mirare	Vereris, or Verere	Sequeris, or Sequere	Blandiris, or Blandire
3. "	Miratur	Veretur	Sequitur	Blanditur

PLURAL.

1. Pers.,	Miramur	Veremur	Sequimur	Blandimur
2. "	Miramini	Veremini	Sequimini	Blandimini
3. "	Mirantur	Verentur	Sequuntur	Blandiuntur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Pers.,	Mirabar	Verebar	Sequebar	Blandiebar
2. "	Mirabaris, or or mirabare verebare &c.	Verebaris, or &c.	Sequebaris, or Sequebare &c.	Blandiebaris, or blandiebare &c.

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. Pers.,	Mirabor	Verebor	Sequar	Blandiar
2. "	Miraberis, Vereberis, or or mirabere verebere		Sequeris, or Sequere	Blandieris, or Blandiere
3. "	Mirabitur	Verebitur	Sequetur	Blandietur

PLURAL.

1. Pers.,	Mirabimur	Verebimur	Sequemur	Blandiemur
2. "	Mirabimini	Verebimini	Sequimini	Blandiemini
3. "	Mirabuntur	Verebuntur	Sequentur	Blandientur

PERFECT.

Miratus sum	Veritus sum	Secutus sum	Blanditus sum
-------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

PLUPERFECT.

Miratus eram	Veritus eram	Secutus eram	Blanditus eram
--------------	--------------	--------------	----------------

FUTURE-PERFECT.

Miratus ero	Veritus ero	Secutus ero	Blanditus ero
-------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

IMPERATIVE PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

Mirare	Verere	Sequere	Blandire
--------	--------	---------	----------

PLURAL.

Miramini	Veremini	Sequimini	Blandimini
----------	----------	-----------	------------

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	Mirans, <i>admiring</i>	Verens	Sequens	Blandiens
<i>Per.</i>	Miratus, <i>having admired</i>	Veritus	Secutus	Blanditus
<i>Fut.</i>	Miraturus, <i>about to admire.</i>	Veriturus	Secuturus	Blanditurus
	Mirandus, <i>about to be admired.</i>	Verendus	Sequendus	Blandiendus

Note.—Deponents have a Perf. Part. Act., but with a passive form: as, *Caesar locutus tacuit*, *Caesar having spoken was silent*.

XIV. VERBS OF THE III CONJUGATION IN -IO.

Some verbs in -io of the III Conj. have a distinctive form in the Pres. Ind. and drop the i before -er. Thus:

CONJUGATION OF CAPIO.

Principal Parts: *Capio, capere, cepi, captum, take.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRESENT.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	Capio	Capimus	Capior	Capimur
2. "	Capis	Capitis	Caperis, or	Capimini
3. "	Capit	Capiunt	Capitur	Capiuntur

IMPERFECT.

Capiebam

Capiebar

FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	Capiam	Capiemus	Capiar	Capiemur
2. "	Capies	Capietis	Capieris, or	Capiemini
3. "	Capiet	Capient	Capietur	Capientur

PERFECT.

Cepi

Captus sum

PLUPERFECT.

Ceperam

Captus eram

FUTURE-PERFECT.

Cepero

Captus ero

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Capiam

Capiar

IMPERFECT.

Caperem

Caperer

Per. and Pluperf. are regular.

IMPERATIVE.

2. Pers.,	Cape	Capite	Capere	Capimini
-----------	------	--------	--------	----------

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Capere	Capi
<i>Perf.</i> Cepisse	Captum esse
<i>Fut.</i> Capturus esse	Captum iri

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> Capiens	<i>Fut.</i> Capturus	<i>Perf.</i> Captus	<i>Fut.</i> Capiendus
----------------------	----------------------	---------------------	-----------------------

XV. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Sum, *I am.* Possum, *I am able.* Prosum, *I benefit.*

<i>Principal parts</i>	Sum	Fui	Esse
	Possum	Potui	Posse
	Prosum	Profui	Prodesse

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Sum	Possum	Prosum
2. Es	Potes	Prodes
3. Est	Potest	Prodest

PLURAL.

1. Sumus	Possumus	Prosumus
2. Estis	Potestis	Prodestis
3. Sunt	Possunt	Prosunt

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Eram	Poteram	Proderam
2. Eras	Poteras	Proderas
3. Erat	Poterat	Proderat

PLURAL.

1. Eramus	Poteramus	Proderamus
2. Eratis	Poteratis	Proderatis
3. Erant	Poterant	Proderant

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. Ero	Potero	Prodero
2. Eris	Poteris	Proderis
3. Erit	Poterit	Proderit

PLURAL

1. Erimus	Poterimus	Proderimus
2. Eritis	Poteritis	Proderitis
3. Erunt	Poterunt	Proderunt

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fui	Potui	Profui
2. Fuisti	Potuisti	Profuisti
&c.	&c.	&c.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fueram	Potueram	Profueram
2. Fueras	Potueras	Profueras
&c.	&c.	&c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fuero	Potuerō	Profuero
2. Fueris	Potueris	Profueris
&c.	&c.	&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Sim	Possim	Prosim
2. Sis	Possis	Prosis
3. Sit	Possit	Prosit

PLURAL.

1. Simus	Possimus	Prosimus
2. Sitis	Possitis	Prosit
3. Sint	Possint	Prosint

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Essem	Possem	Prodessem
2. Esses &c.	Posses &c.	Prodesse &c.

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fuerim	Potuerim	Profuerim
2. Fueris &c.	Potueris &c.	Profueris &c.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fuissem	Potuissem	Profuissem
2. Fuisses &c.	Potuisse &c.	Profuisses &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. Es	None	Prodes
-------	------	--------

PLURAL.

2. Este	None	Prodeste
---------	------	----------

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. Esto, <i>thou shall be</i>	None	Prodesto
3. Esto <i>he shall be</i>	None	Prodesto

PLURAL.

2. Estote, <i>ye shall be</i>	None	Prodestote
3. Sunt, <i>they shall be</i>	None	Prosunt

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Esse	Posse	Prodesse
<i>Perfect.</i>	Fuisse	Potuisse	Profuisse
<i>Future.</i>	Futurus esse (fore)	—	Profuturus esse

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	—	Potens	—
<i>Future.</i>	Futurus, -a, -um	—	Profuturus, -a, -um

PRETERITIVE VERBS.

Memini	Meminisse	<i>I remember.</i>
Coepi	Coepisse	<i>I begin, or I began</i>
Odi	Odisse	<i>I hate</i>
Novi	Novisse	<i>I know</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Memini, -isti, etc.	Coepi	Odi	Novi
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Memineram, -eras, etc.	Coeperam	Oderam	Noveram
<i>Fut. Pf.</i>	Meminero, -eris, etc.	Coepero	Odero	Novero

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Meminerim, -eris	Coeperim	Oderim	Noverim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Meminissem, -isses	Coepissem	Odissem	Novissem

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Memento	Mementote
---------	-----------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Per.</i>	Meminisse	Coepisse	Odisse	Novisse
<i>Fut.</i>	Wanting	Coepturus esse	Osurus esse	Wanting

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i>	} Wanting	Coepus	Osus	Notus
<i>Pass.</i>				
<i>Fut.</i>	} Wanting	Coepturus	Osurus	Wanting
<i>Act.</i>				

IRREGULAR VERBS—VOLO, NOLO, MALO.

<i>Principal Parts</i>	Volo	Velle	Volui	<i>I will, I wish, I am willing</i>
	Nolo	Nolle	Nolui	<i>I am unwilling.</i>
	Malo	Malle	Malui	<i>I prefer</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Volo	Nolo	Malo
2. Vis	Non vis	Mavis
3. Vult	Non vult	Mavult

PLURAL.

1. Volumus	Nolumus	Malumus
2. Vultis	Non vultis	Mavultis
3. Volunt	Nolunt	Malunt

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Volebam	Nolebam	Malebam
2. Volebas	Nolebas	Malebas
&c.	&c.	&c.

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. Volam	Nolam	Malam
2. Voles	Noles	Males
3. Volet	Nolet	Malet

PLURAL.

1. Volemus	Nolemus	Malemus
2. Voletis	Noletis	Maletis
3. Volent	Nolent	Malent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Volui	Nolui	Malui
&c.	&c.	&c.

PLUPERFECT.

1. Volueram &c.	Nolueram &c.	Malueram &c.
--------------------	-----------------	-----------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. Voluero &c.	Noluero &c.	Maluero &c.
-------------------	----------------	----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Velim	Nolim	Malim
2. Velis	Nolis	Malis
3. Velit	Nolit	Malit

PLURAL.

1. Velimus	Notimus	Malimus
2. Velitis	Nolitis	Malitis
3. Velint	Nolint	Malint

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Vellem	Nollem	Mallem
2. Velles &c.	Nolles &c.	Malles &c.

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Voluerim &c.	Noluerim &c.	Maluerim &c.
--------------------	-----------------	-----------------

PLUPERFECT.

1. Voluissem	Noluissem	Maluissem
--------------	-----------	-----------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. None	Noli	None
---------	------	------

PLURAL.

2. None	Nolite	None
---------	--------	------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Velle	Nolle	Malle
<i>Perf.</i> Voluisse	Noluisse	Maluisse

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> Volens (used as an adj. . .willing)	Nolens (used as an Adj. . .unwilling)	None.
--	---------------------------------------	-------

Fero, *I carry**Principal Parts*—Fero, ferre, tuli, latum

PRESENT.

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
SINGULAR.			
1. Fero	Feram	Feror	Ferar
		Ferris	Feraris
2. Fers	Feras	Ferre	Ferare
3. Fert	Ferat	Fertur	Feratur
PLURAL.			
1. Ferimus	Feramus	Ferimur	Feramur
2. Fertis	Feratis	Ferimini	Feramini
3. Ferunt	Ferant	Feruntur	Ferantur

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
SINGULAR.			
1. Ferebam	Ferrem	Ferebar	Ferrer
		Ferebaris	Ferreris
2. Ferebas	Ferres	Ferebare	Ferrere
3. Ferebat	Ferret	Ferebatur	Ferretur
PLURAL.			
1. Ferebamus	Ferremus	Ferebamur	Ferremur
2. Ferebatis	Ferretis	Ferebamini	Ferremini
3. Ferebant	Ferrent	Ferebantur	Ferrentur

FUTURE.

INDIC.	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	SUBJ.		INDIC.	SUBJ.
SINGULAR.				
1. Feram		Ferar		
2. Feres		Fereris		
&c.		Ferere		
		&c.		

PERFECT.

INDIC.	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	SUBJ.		INDIC.	SUBJ.
1. Tuli	Tulerim		Latus sum	Latus sim
&c.	&c.		&c.	&c.

PLUPERFECT.

INDIC.	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	SUBJ.		INDIC.	SUBJ.
1. Tuleram	Tulisse		Latus eram	Latus essem

FUTURE PERFECT.

INDIC.	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	SUBJ.		INDIC.	SUBJ.
SINGULAR.				
1. Tulero		Latus ero		
&c.		&c.		

IMPERATIVE.
PRESENT

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
		SINGULAR.	
2. Fer		Ferre	
		FLURAL.	
2 Ferte		Ferimini	

FUTURE.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

SINGULAR.

2. Fertō, <i>you shall carry</i>	Fertor
3. Fertō, <i>he shall carry</i>	Fertor

PLURAL.

2. Fertote, <i>ye shall carry</i>	Wanting
3. Ferunto, <i>t'ey shall car</i>	Feruntor

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Ferre	Ferri
Perf. Tulisse	Latus esse
Fut. Laturus, esse	Latum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Ferens	Wanting
Perf. Wanting	Latus, -a, -um
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um	Ferendus, -a, -um

SUPINE

Latum	Latu
-------	------

Fio, *I become.**Principal Parts*—Fio, fieri, factus sum

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

SINGULAR.

1. Fio	Fiam	Factus sum	Factus sim
2. Fis	Fias	Factus es	Factus sis
3. Fit	Fiat	Factus est	Factus sit

PLURAL.

1. Fimus	Fiamus	Facti sumus	Facti simus
2. Fitis	Fiatis	Facti estis	Facti sitis
3. Fiunt	Fiant	Facti sunt	Facti sint

IMPERFECT

INDIC.

SUBJ.

PLUPERFECT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

SINGULAR.

1. Fiebam
&c.

Fierem
&c.

Factus eram
&c.

Factus essem
&c.

FUTURE

1. Fiam
2. Fies
&c.

FUTURE PERFECT

Factus ero
Factus eris
&c.

IMPERATIVE.

Fi

Fite

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fieri

Perf. Factus esse

Fut. Factum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Factus, -a, -um

Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um

SUPINE.

Factum.

Eo, *I go.*

Principal Parts—Eo, ire, ivi or ii, itum.

PRESENT

INDIC.

SUBJ.

PERFECT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

1. Eo
2. Is
3. It

Eam
Eas
Eat

ii or ivi
&c.

Iverim or Ierim
&c.

1. Imus
2. Itis
3. Eunt

Eamus
Eatis
Eant

IMPERFECT

PLUPERFECT

Ibam
&c.

Irem
&c.

Iveram or Ieram
&c.

Ivissem or Iissem
&c.

FUTURE

1. Ibo
2. Ibis
- &c.

FUTURE PERFECT

- Ivero *or* Iero
Iveris *or* Ieris
&c.

IMPERATIVE.
PRESENT.

SINGULAR

2. I

2. Ito

3. Ito

PLURAL.

2. Ite

2. Itote

3. Eunto

FUTURE.

INFINITIVE

- Pres.* Ire
Perf. Ivisse *or* Iisse
Fut. Iturus esse

PARTICIPLES

- Pres. Act.* Iens (gen. euntis)
Fut. Act. Iturus
Fut. Pass. Eundus

SUPINES.

Active. Itum.*Passive.* Itu.

XVI. LIST OF COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS.

- Ab-icio (IACIO), -ere, ieci, -iectum.
 Ab-ripio (RAPIO), -ere, ripui, -reptum.
 Ac-cido (CADO), -ere, -cidi.
 Ac-cipio (CAPIO), -ere, -cepi, -ceptum.
 Ad-imo (EMO), -ere, -emi, -emptum.
 Ad-iuvo, -are, -iuvi, -iutum.
 Ad-orior, -oriri, -ortus sum.
 Ad-fero, -ferre, at-tuli, al-latum.
 Af-ficio (FACIO), -ere, -feci, -fectum.
 A-gnosco ((G)NOSCO), -ere, a-gnovi, a-gnitum (agnoturus).
 Ago, -ere, egi, actum.
 Alo, -ere, alui, altum.
 A-perio, -ire, aperui, aptum.
 A-scendo (SCANDO), -ere, -i, -scensum.
 A-spicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum.
 Audeo, -ere, ausus sum.
 Audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
 Au-fero, -ferre, abs-tuli, ablatum.
 Bibo, -ere, bibi.
 Cado, -ere, cecidi, casum.
 Caedo, -ere, cecidi, caesum.
 Capió, -ere, cepi, captum.
 Compounds like accipio.
 Cedo, -ere, cessi, cessum.
 Circum-do, -ere, -dedi, -datum.
 Claudio, -ere, clausi, clausum.
 Compounds like includo.
 Co-gnosco, -ere, -gnovi, -gnitum.
 Co-go (AGO), -ere, coegi, coactum.
 Col-ligo (LEGO), -ere, -legi, -lectum.
 Com-perio (PARIO), -ire, comperi, compertum.
 Com-plector, -i, complexus.
 Compleo, -ere, -evi, -etum.
 Com-primo (PREMO), -ere, -pressi, -pressum.
 Con-icio (IACIO), -ere, -ieci, -iectum.
 Con-scendo (SCANDO), -ere, -scendi, -scensum.
 Con-sido, -ere, consedi, consessum.
 Con-sisto, -ere, constitui, constitum.
 Con-spicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum.
 Con-stituo, -ere, -ui, -stitutum.
 Con-suesco, -ere, -suevi, -sue ^{itum}.
 Con-sulo, -ere, consului, -sultum.
 Con-temno, -ere, -tempsi, -temptum.
 Con-tendo, -ere, -tendi, -tentum.
 Con-valesco, -ere, -valui.
 Credo, -ere, -didi, -ditum.
 Cresco, -ere, crevi, cretum.
 Cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum.
 Curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum.
 Dedo, -ere, dedidi, deditum.
 De-icio (IACIO), -ere, ieci, -iectum.
 De-fendo, -ere, -fendi, fensum.
 Deleo, -ere, deleui, deletum.
 De-scendo (SCANDO), -ere, -scendi, -scensum.
 De-sero, -ere, -serui, -sertum.
 De-silio (SALIO), -ire, -ui.
 De-sino, -ere, desii *or* desivi, desitum.
 De-sisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum.
 De-spicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum.
 Dico, -ere, dixi, dictum.
 Di-gredior (GRADIOR), -i, -gresus sum.
 Di-ligo, -ere, -lexi, -lectum.
 Cf. deligo (reg.).

Disco, -ere, didici.
 Divido, ere, divisi, divisum.
 Do, dare, dedi, datum.
 Doceo, -ere, docui, doctum.
 Duco, -ere, duxi, ductum.

E-ligo (LEGO), -ere, -legi, -lectum.
 Emo, -ere, emi, emptum.
 Eo, ire, ivi (ii), itum.
 Ex-pello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum.
 Expergiscor, -i, experrectus sum.
 Ex-prior, -iri, -pertus sum.
 Ex-stinguo, -ere, stinxi, -stinctum.

Facio, -ere, feci, factum.
 Compounds like afficio.
 Fallo, -ere, fefelli, falsum.
 Fateor, -eri, fassus sum.
 Ferio, -ire, percussi, percussus sum.
 Fero, ferre, tuli, latum.
 Figo, -ere, fixi, fixum.
 Fingo, -ere, finxi, fictum.
 Fio, fieri, factus sum.
 Fleo, -ere, flevi, fletum.
 Fluo, -ere, fluxi,
 Frango, -ere, fregi, fractum.
 Fruor, -i, fructus sum.
 Fugio, -ere, fugi.

Gaudeo, -ere, gavisus sum.
 Gero, -ere, gessi, gestum.
 Gigno, -ere, genui, genitum.
 Grador, -i, gressus sum.
 Compounds like digredior.

Iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum.
 Compounds like abicio.
 I-gnosco, -ere, -gnovi, gnotum.
 In-cendo, -ere, -cendi, -censum.

In-cludo (CLAUDO), -ere, -clusi, clusum.
 Intel-lego, -ere, -lexi, -lectum.
 Inter-imo (EMO), -ere, -emi, -emptum.
 Irascor, -i, -iratus sum.
 Iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum.
 Iungo, -ere, -iunxi, iunctum.

Labor, -i, lapsus sum.
 Laedo, -ere, laesi, laesum.
 Lavo, -are, lavi, lautum.
 Lego, -ere, legi, lectum.
 Loquor, -i, locutus sum.

Malo, malle, malui.
 Maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum.
 Metuo, -ere, metui.
 Mico, -are, -ui.
 Mitto, -ere, misi, missum.
 Morior, mori, mortuus sum (mori-turus).
 Moveo, -ere, movi, motum.

Nanciscor, -i, nactus.
 Nascor, -i, natus sum.
 Neg-lego, -ere, lexi, -lectum.
 Nolo, nolle, nolui.
 Nosco, -ere, novi, notum.
 Nubo, -ere, nupsi, nuptum.

Obliviscor, -i, oblitus sum.
 Ob-sideo (SEDEO), -ere, -sedi, -sessum.
 Ob-sto, -stare, stiti (obstaturus).
 Oc-cido (CADO), -ere, -cidi, -casum.
 Oc-cido (CAEDO), -ere, -cidi, -cisum.
 Of-ferre, obtuli, oblatum.
 Orior, -iri, ortus sum (oriturus).
 Os-tendo, -ere, -tendi, -tensum.

Parco, -ere, peperci.

Pasco, -ere, pavi, pastum.

Pate-facio, -ere, -feci, -factum.

Patior, -i, passus sum.

Pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum.

Per-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum.

Per-eo, -ire, perii, -itum.

Pergo (REGO), -ere, perrexi, per-
rectum.

Per-petior (PATIOR), -i, perpessus
sum.

Peto, -ere, -ivi (-ii), -itum.

Pono, -ere, posui, positum.

Posco, -ere, poposci.

Pos-sum, posse, potui.

Premo, -ere, pressi, pressum.

Compounds like *comprimo*.

Pro-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum.

Proficiscor, -i, profectus sum.

Quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum.

Queror, queri, questus sum.

Quiesco, -ere, quievi, quietum.

Rapio, -ere, rapui, raptum.

Compounds like *abripio*.

Re-cumbo, -ere, -cubui.

Red-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum.

Re-icio (IACIO), -ere, -ieci, -iectum.

Re-linquo, -ere, -liqui, -lictum.

Re-perio, -ire, repperi, repertum.

Re-sisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum.

Re-spondeo, -ere, -spondi, -sponsum.

Rideo, -ere, risi, risum.

Rumpo, -ere, rupi, ruptum.

Scindo, -ere, scidi, scissum.

Scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum.

Sedeo, -ere, sedi, sessum.

Sentio, -ire, sensi, sensum.

Sequor, -i, secutus sum.

Soleo, -ere, solitus sum.

Solvo, -ere, solvi, solutum.

Statuo, -ere, statui, statutum.

Compounds like *constituo*.

Sto, stare, steti, statum.

Compounds like *obsto*.

Stringo, -ere, strinxi, strictum.

Suadeo, -ere, suasi, suasum.

Sumo (EMO), -ere, sumpsi, sumptum.

Surgo (REGO), -ere, surrexi, sur-
rectum.

Sus-tineo (TENE0), -ere, tinui, -ten-
tum.

Tango, -ere, tetigi, tactum.

Teneo, -ere, tenui, tentum.

Compounds like *sustineo*.

Ting(u)o, -ere, tinxi, tinctum.

Tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatum.

Trado, -ere, -didi, ditum.

Traho, -ere, traxi, tractum.

Ulciscor, -i, ultus sum.

Utor, -i, usus sum.

Veho, -ere, vexi, vectum.

Vello, -ere, velli, vulsum.

Ven-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum.

Venio, -ire, veni, ventum.

Verto, -ere, verti, versum.

Veto, -are, vetui, vetitum.

Video, -ere, vidi, visum.

Vincio, -ire, vinxi, vinctum.

Vinco, -ere, vici, victum.

Viso, -ere, visi, visum.

Vivo, -ere, vixi, victum.

Volo, velle, volui.

Voveo, -ere, vovi, votum.

XVII. THE PREPOSITION.

Prepositions in Latin govern (with very few exceptions) either the accusative or the ablative, or both.

Prepositions with Accusative and Ablative.

In, sub (subter), and super.

Thus: In urbe, *in the city* (rest); in urbem, *into the city* (motion).
Sub muro, *under the wall*; sub murum, *under the wall*. Super eo
pendet, *it hangs over him*; super eum volat, *it flies over him* (motion).

Prepositions with the Ablative.

A (or ab), *from, by*; coram, *in presence of*; cum, *with*; de, *from, concerning*; e (ex), *out of*; prae, *in consequence of*; pro, *on behalf of*; sine, *without*; tenus, *up to* (written after its case).

Prepositions with the Accusative.

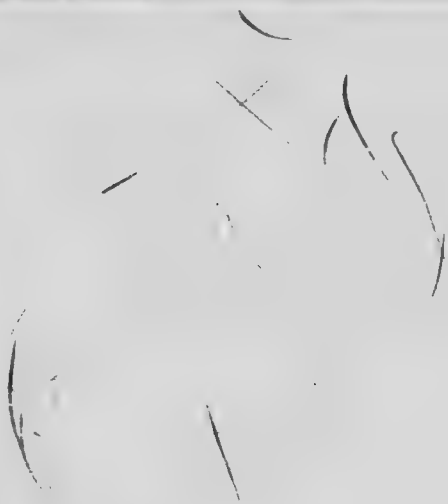
Ad, *towards*; adversus, *against*; ante, *before*; apud, *beside*; circum, (or circa), *round*; cis (or citra), *on this side of*; trans, *across*; contra, *against*; erga, *towards*; extra, *outside of*; inter, *among*; infra, *below*; intra, *within*; iuxta, *near*; ob, *on account of*; penes, *in the power of*; per, *through*; post, *behind*; praeter, *past*; prope, *near to*; propter, *close to, on account of*; secundum, *along, behind*; versus, *towards* (written after its case); ultra, *beyond*.

Translate into Latin :

1. Next day he descends from the mountain and pitches his camp beside the river.
2. Oh! that he had not led us towards Rome.
3. This done, he threw himself upon his sword.
4. Are we never to know in whose hands the decision rests?
5. Tell me when you intend to speak to him about it.
6. Do not speak in his behalf.
7. You will have the greatest influence with him.
8. They halted when they came within the cast of a spear.
9. Is there not a race that dwells beneath the earth?
10. After so many battles we are tired of war.
11. You have come here after the manner of (*in modum*) fugitives.
12. In whose hands does the power lie?
13. It is a scandalous thing to take money for (*ob*) giving a verdict.
14. Do you think they love each other? (use *inter se*).

PART II.

LATIN SYNTAX.



PART II. LATIN SYNTAX.

§ 1. NOMINATIVE. ACCUSATIVE. VOCATIVE.

1. Some verbs like *dicor* (*I am said*), *videor* (*I seem*), *putor* (*I am thought*) and *trador* or *feror* (*I am said*), prefer the personal to the English impersonal use: as,

Dicitur ille rex fuisse. *It is said that he was king* (lit., *he is said to have been king*).

Traditur Homerus caecus fuisse. *It is related that Homer was blind.*

NOTE.—The Nom. and not the Acc. is then used with the Inf.

2. Many verbs in Latin—and especially verbs of *motion*—prefer an impersonal passive use to the English personal use in the active: as,

Ad aedem ventum est. *They came to the temple* (lit., *it was come*).

The English subject is then often expressed by a (or ab) with the Abl.: as,

Ab omnibus ambulatum est. *Everybody walked.*

NOTE.—This form is found in the Fut. Inf. Pass.: as, *Dicit urbem captum iri.* *He says that the city will be taken* (lit., *that it is gone to take the city*. Captum, supine).

3. Verbs that govern the Dat. are used impersonally in the Pass., the Nom. in English becoming the Dat. in Latin: as,

Tibi credo. *I believe you.* But, *Tibi creditur.* *You are believed* (lit., *it is believed to you*).

Gloriae tuae invidetur. *Your glory is envied.*

4. Verbs meaning to *ask*, *teach*, *conceal*, govern two accusatives, one of the person, another of the thing: as,

Me primum sententiam rogavit. *He asked me my opinion first.*

Quis te musicam docuit? *Who taught you music?*

Nihil nos celat. *He conceals nothing from us.*

When used passively, the Acc. of the person becomes the subject, and the Acc. of the thing is retained: as,

Filius musicam a patre doctus est. *The son was taught music by the father.*

NOTE.—Peto and quaero (*I ask*) and postulo (*I demand*) are followed by a (or ab): as,

Pacem a Romanis petunt. *They are asking peace from the Romans.*

Causam a viro quaesivit. *He asked the man for a reason (lit., from the man).*

Librum ab amico postulavit. *He demanded a book from his friend.*

5. Verbs like creo and facio (*elect*), appello (*call*), habeo and duco (*regard*) take two Accs. in the Act.: as,

Eum consulem faciunt. *They are electing him consul.*

Nos fratres appellavit. *He called us brothers.*

In the Pass., of course, both Accs. become Nom.: as, Is consul creatus est. *He was elected consul.*

6. The Acc. is used without a preposition to express *duration of time*: as,

Multos annos iam regnat: *He has been reigning now for many years.*

NOTE.—The Pres. is used for the English Perf. with adverbs of time extending up to the present.

7. The Acc. is used to express the *limit of motion* with the names of towns or small islands: as, Roman rediit. *He has returned to Rome.*

NOTE.—Ad Roman would mean "to the neighborhood of Rome" With other nouns, a preposition is required: as, Abiit ad forum. *He went off to the forum.* In Africam venit. *He came to Africa.*

8. The Acc. (called the Acc. of Exclamation) is often used to express indignation or surprise: as, O me miserum, *Wretched man that I am!*

9. The vocative is not, as a usual thing, preceded by O: as, Mihi crede, M. Antoni. *Believe me, Mark Antony.*

The vocative is used for the Nom. in, Macte virtute esto. *A blessing on your valor (= be increased in valor).*

EXERCISE I.

1. Experience will teach you many things. 2. We will ask two magistrates from the people. 3. He will soon be made consul. 4. Only fools are fortunate. 5. They can teach us nothing. 6. It is said, Quirites, that the bravest have all been killed. 7. It seemed that all the cities had fought against us. 8. It seemed to many of us that the man was wise. 9. They can not be trusted or believed

10. What can not be cured, we will endure. 11. You will all be answered soon. 12. They will never make him first magistrate again. 13. It was believed that he had suddenly crossed the river with all his army. 14. What an insulting (*contumeliosus*) honor!

§ 2. GENITIVE. POSSESSIVE AND PARTITIVE GEN., GEN. OF QUALITY, GEN. OF PRICE.

1. The genitive usually stands before the noun it governs and, if there is an Adj. with the noun, the Gen. stands between the two in order to give compactness to the phrase: as, *Pulchra regis filia. The beautiful daughter of the king.*

The Gen. is often used for an English Adj.: as, *Corporis robur, bodily strength; regis exercitus, the royal army.*

Note.—In phrases like *ad Vestae (to the temple of Vesta)*, *ad Apollinis (to the temple of Apollo)*, the governing noun *templum* or *aedem* is understood.

2. The Gen. is used with the verb *esse, to be*, in the sense of *to belong to*: as,

Hic versus Plauti non est. This verse is not Plautus's.

Summae est dementiae. It is the height of madness.

This Gen. may often be translated by a noun like *part, mark, characteristic, duty*, etc.: as,

Stulti est in errore perseverare. It is the mark of a fool to persist in error.

Note.—The possessive pronoun is used, however, instead of the Gen. of the personal: as, *Tuum est parere. It is your business to obey (not tui est).*

3. The Gen. denotes, as in English, the *whole* of which a part is taken: as,

Magna exercitus pars. A great part of the army.

This is called the partitive Gen. and is very widely used.

The governing word usually expresses *number* or *amount*: as, *Multi vestrum. Many of you. Quid novi? What news? (lit., what of new?)*

It is common after *satis (enough)*, *nimis (too much)*, *parum (too little)*, *nihil (none)*, *aliquid (some)*, *tantum (so much)*, *quantum (how much)*: as,

Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum. *Enough eloquence, too little wisdom.*

It is also found after adverbs of place: as,

Ubi gentium? *Where in the world?*

Eo stultitiae venit. *He has reached such a pitch of folly* (lit., *come thither of folly*).

Note.—Nostrum and vestrum (not nostri and vestri) are used with partitives for *of us* and *of you*: as, Uterque nostrum. *Each of us two.* But, Memor nostri fuit, *he was mindful of us.*

4. The partitive Gen. must not be used in the following cases:

(a) To express the English *of*, where there is no partition implied: as, Nos omnes, *all of us*; tota Asia, *the whole of Asia*; nos trecenti venimus, *three hundred of us have come.*

(b) With an Adj. of the III Decl. as, Nihil turpe, *nothing base* (not turpis.)

(c) After a preposition: as, Ad multam noctem, *to a late hour of the night* (not ad multum).

(d) If the governing word is in any ^{case} but the Nom. or Acc.: as, Tanta pecunia, *at so much money* (not tanto pecuniae).

(e) After words like *top, bottom, middle*, etc., which are expressed by Adjs. in agreement: as, E summo monte, *from the top of the hill*; medio in foro, *in the middle of the forum*; ad imam quercum, *to the foot of the oak*; reliquae copiae, *the rest of the forces*; primum ver, *the beginning of spring*; in extremo libro, *at the end of the book.*

5. A noun in the Gen. is added to another to express a quality: as, Vir summi ingenii, *a man of the highest ability*,

The Abl. is much more commonly used, however, to express a quality, the Gen. denoting rather *permanent* qualities, the Abl. *external* and *accidental* ones: as, Vir longis cruribus, *a man with long legs.*

Quantity and amount are expressed by this Gen.: as, Agger viginti pedum, *a mound of twenty feet high*; puer decem annorum, *a boy of ten years.*

Neither the Gen. nor the Abl. of quality can be used without an Adj. Thus: *A man of courage*, vir fortis (or vir summae fortitudinis, not vir fortitudinis.)

Note.—The Adj. is usually magnus, maximus, summus, tantus, eius.

6. The price at which a thing is bought, sold or valued is expressed by the Gen., when the price is stated indefinitely: as, *Magni, at a great price; parvi, at a small price; tanti, at so great a price; quanti, at how great a price; pluris, at a greater price; minoris, at a less price; maximi or plurimi, at the greatest price; minimi, at the least price.*

Thus: *Quanti id vendit? At what price does he sell it?*

Minoris decumae venierunt. The tithes sold at a lower figure [veneo, to be sold, from venum, sale + eo, to go].

Note. — When the price is definitely stated it is expressed by the Abl.: as, *Emit domum duobus talentis et pluris. He bought a house at two talents and more.*

EXERCISE 2.

1. This man was the bravest of all the soldiers. 2. It is the part of a good judge to obey the laws. 3. Two altars have been built in the middle of the city. 4. All of these cities will soon be taken by them. 5. The rich never seem to themselves to have too much money. 6. How much glory you have lost! 7. You can see stars from the bottom of a well. 8. They came at last to the top of the mountain. 9. There is much good and nothing mean in the man. 10. How much pleasure you will receive! 11. It is the duty of children to obey their parents. 12. This house belonged to the noblest of the citizens. 13. He has taught you, citizens, no good as yet. 14. Nothing human is alien to him. 15. It was my business to teach them something new. 16. Men of genius are rare. 17. At what price will the ship be sold? 18. This city has always been most eager for revolution. 19. A useless thing is dear at a cent (as, assis.) *ad 7*

§ 3. GENITIVE CONTINUED. GEN. WITH ADJS. AND VERBS.

1. Adjs. that express *plenty* and *want* or contain a *verbal notion* are followed by the Gen.: as,

Plenus avium, full of birds; patiens laboris, capable of labor; cupidus contentionis, desirous of strife; spei egenus, destitute of hope.

Note 1.—A Pres. Part., when it loses all idea of time and simply expresses a quality, governs the Gen.: as, *Amans patriae, devoted to his country; appetens gloriae, desirous of glory.*

- It is in that case compared like an ordinary Adj.

Note 2.—*Similis* (*like*), *dissimilis* (*unlike*), and *proprius* (*peculiar to*), are followed by the Gen. and (more rarely) the Dat.: as, *Similis sui, like himself*; *virorum proprium, peculiar to men*.

- 2. Verbs meaning to *accuse, condemn, and acquit*, take the Acc. of the person and the Gen. of the thing: as,

Accusat me furti. He accuses me of theft.

Repetundarum damnatus est. He was condemned for extortion (lit., *things that should be recovered*; supply *rerum*).

Sacrilegii absoluta est. She was acquitted of sacrilege.

Note.—The *punishment*, after such verbs as the above, is expressed by the Gen. or (more commonly) the Abl.: as, *Morte damnatus est. He was condemned to death. Capitis* (or *capite*) *damnatus est. He was capitally condemned* (*caput, a man's political rights*).

- 3. Verbs meaning to *remind, remember, forget, or pity*, take the Gen.: as,

Me beneficii sui admonebat. He reminded me of his kindness.

Note.—*Admoneo* may also take the Acc. of a neuter pronoun: as, *Hoc nos admonet. He reminds us of this.*

Huius diei semper meminero. I shall always remember this day. Officii ne obliviscaris. Do not forget your duty.

Miserere nostri. Pity us.

Note 1.—Instead of *memini, remember*, the phrase *Mihi in mentem venit* (*it comes into my mind*), may be used with the Gen.: as, *Mihi in mentem venit eius diei. I recollect that day.*

Note 2.—*Miser-eor, -eri, -tus* (or *-itus*) *sum* is *I pity*; but *miseror, -ari, -atus sum, I deplore, bewail*: as, *Casum nostrum miseratur, he bewails our misfortune.*

- 4. The five following impersonal verbs, expressing emotion, take the accusative of the person feeling, and the Gen. of the source of the emotion: as,

Miseret me tui. I pity you (lit., *it fills me with pity for you*).

Me non solum poenitet stultitiae sed etiam pudet. I am not only sorry for my folly but even ashamed of it.

Me frateris et piget et taedet. I am annoyed at and disgusted with my brother.

Note.—These verbs respectively express *to fill with pity, annoyance, sorrow, shame, or disgust*. They are all transitive. Thus: *Eum facti nec poenitet nec pudet. He feels neither remorse nor shame for his act.*

5. With interest and refert, *it is of importance to, it concerns*, if the person *to whom* it is of importance is expressed by a noun, the Gen. of the noun is used; if by a personal pronoun, the Abl. Sing. Fem. of the corresponding possessive Adj.: as,

Multum regis interest. *It is of much importance to the king.* But: Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, interest. *It concerns me, you &c.*

6. Interest and refert may have as subject an Inf., an ut-clause, a pronoun, or an indirect question: as,

Omnium interest bene vivere. *It is for the interest of all to live well.*

Multum interest ut copiae nostrae convenient. *It is of much importance that our forces should assemble.*

Non possum dicere quantum id intersit. *I can not say how important it is.*

Nihil interest quot sitis. *It makes no difference how many you are.*

EXERCISE 3.

1. It is the part of a fool to see the faults of others and forget his own. 2. I am sorry to have wounded (*offendo*) your feelings (*animus*). 3. He used to say that it was not of so much importance to himself as to the country (*res publica*). 4. It is of great importance to all that the worst citizens should not elect the magistrates (*use Inf.*). 5. It is the proof of a good man to remember the poor. 6. Everyone is tired of this war. 7. It is the mark of a mean mind to love wealth. 8. They will soon be sorry for their fault. 9. It is of the utmost importance not only to us but to you. 10. Everyone will remind you of your fault. 11. Snakes of great size can be found in the island. 12. It was of great importance to have a wise king. 13. Then at length we came to the temple of Apollo.

§ 4. INDIRECT NARRATION. ACC. WITH INF.

1. Verbs like *I say* (*dico*) and *I think* (*puto*) are followed in English by a *that*-clause and in Latin by an Inf.: as,

Dicit vitam esse brevem. *He says that life is short.*

Dixit vitam esse brevem. *He said that life was short.*

The part of the sentence dependent upon the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is said to be in *indirect narration*.

The "direct" form would be: *Vita brevis est, life is short* and it should be noticed that the tense of the main verb of the "direct" does not change, as in English, after a past tense, in Latin "indirect."

The subject of the Inf. is in the Acc. and the two together are called the *Acc. with the Inf.*

2. The following are examples of

ACC. WITH INF.

Dicit eam scribere. *He says that she is writing* (direct: *ea scribit, she is writing*).

Dicit eam scripturam esse. *He says that she will write* (direct: *ea scribet, she will write*.)

Dicit eam scripsisse (heri). *He says that she wrote (yesterday)* (direct: *ea scripsit heri, she wrote yesterday*).

Dixit eam scribere. *He said that she was writing* (direct: *ea scribit, she is writing*.)

Dixit eam scripturam esse. *He said that she would write* (direct: *ea scribet, she will write*.)

Dixit eam scripsisse (heri). *He said that she wrote (yesterday)* (direct: *ea scripsit heri, she wrote yesterday*).

N.B.—The tense of the Inf. in Latin "indirect" is in every case the tense of the main verb in the direct.

3. The verbs of subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive in indirect narration: as,

Dicit anulum, quem gerat, se sua manu fecisse. *He says that he made with his own hand the ring he is wearing.*

4. To express *he, she, they*, referring to the subject of the verb of *saying* or *thinking*, *se* is used, and *suis* to express *his, her, or their*.

Dicit eam sibi scribere. *He says that he is writing to him*

Dixit se suo iure usurum. *He said that he would ex- right.* Negat se patrem eorum occidisse. *He denies that he killed their father.*

EXERCISE 4.

1. They think that an opportunity is given to all. 2. They thought that an opportunity was given to all. 3. They say that an

opportunity has been given. 4. They said that an opportunity had been given. 5. They thought that this man's name was very great. 6. He said that office was always open in this city to the best men. 7. They think they are the best. 8. I say that he is reading. 9. I said that he was reading. 10. He knew that this country was cold in winter and hot in summer. 11. He thought that it was base to lie. 12. He knew that the days were longer here than with (*apud*) you. 13. He believed that the soul was immortal. 14. All expected that he would attack the city. 15. They knew that the multitude of the stars was great.

§ 5. THE DATIVE.

1. The dative, as a rule, corresponds to the English *to* or *for*: as, *Modum pone irae.* *Set a limit to anger.*

Non mihi sed meis. *Not for myself but for my friends.*

Da mihi aliquid. *Give me something* (*mihi*, indirect obj.)

2. The Dative is used with *sum*, *I am*, in the sense of *to belong to*, *to have*, as,

Est tibi liber. *You have a book.*

Est tibi nomen Marcus. *Your name is Marcus.*

Note. Instead of the Nom. in the last example, the Dat. (*Marco*) or the Gen. (*Marci*) may be used.

3. The Dat. is used for the English *from*, after verbs meaning *to take away*: as,

Eam morti eripuit. *He snatched her from death.*

4. The Dat. is often used where we should expect a Gen.: as, *Pompeii aditus se proiecere.* *The [Pompeians] threw themselves at Pompeii feet.*

5. The Dat. is added to certain verbs (especially *sum*, *do*, *habeo*, *venio*) in order to express the *purpose* or design of the action of the verb.

Uti loquar? Nichil mihi est utile. *Is it useful? (lit., for a good)*

Hoc tibi dedit. *He set this down to me as a fault.*

Veniunt ad nos. *They will come to our aid* (lit., for an aid to us).

This is the Dat. of *purpose*, *d. of service*, or *d. of work done*.

Adjectives and adverbs followed by *to* or *for* in English, are usually followed by the Dat. in Latin: as,

Utilis reipublicae. *Useful to the country.*

Tibi facile, nobis difficile. *Easy for you, difficult for us.*

Patri similis. *Like his father.*

Note.—But with names of persons, similis tends to take the Gen
Locus urbi propinquus. *A place near the city.*

Convenienter naturae vivit. *He lives agreeably to nature.*

Note.—Propior (*nearer*), and proximus (*nearest*), often take the
Acc.; prope, propius, proxime, always: as, Prope te sedet, *he is
sitting near you.*

Adjs. expressing *fitness* are followed by ad (with Acc.) rather than
by a Dat.: as, Ad bellum gerendum aptus, *fit for carrying on war.*
So too, natus (*born*), paratus (*ready*) and rudis (*inexperienced*).

Many Adjs. are followed by in, erga, or adversus, for the English
to: as, Acer in hostem, benignus erga amicos, *fierce to the enemy,
kind to friends.*

EXERCISE 5.

1. He will pay you the money. 2. They say that he is most un-
like himself. 3. He used to say that the sea was a destruction
to sailors. 4. Remain here for a protection to this city. 5. Their
march was more like a rout. 6. You will not be able to take credit
(*laus*) away from him. 7. You will be a protection to us with your
fleet. 8. I will give him as much credit as is due to a man so brave.
9. It is not in keeping with your moderation (§2, 2) to ask too much
of us. 10. They were all most friendly to us. 11. These men seemed
like gods to the barbarians. 12. He told them that he was ashamed
of himself. 13. It is very difficult for us to go to the city. 14.
None of us will ever forget his native land. 15. It is the part of
a good man to pity the poor. 16. He had come into the sight of the
enemy (*Dat.*) 17. They have given him the name of "crazy"
(*insanus*). 18. He said that the woman would be condemned. 19. It
is the proof of a good man to obey the laws.

§ 6. DATIVE WITH VERBS.

1. Sum, *I am*, and its compounds (except possum, *I am able*)
are followed by the Dat.: as,

Est mihi liber. *I have a book.*

Amici non tibi desunt. *Friends are not lacking to you.*

Precelio interfuit. *He took part in the battle.*

2. Most *impersonal* verbs are followed by the Dat.: as,
 Mihi licet et expedit. *It is allowed me and expedient for me.*
 So too: Libet (*it pleases*), accidit and contingit (*it happens*),
 liquet (*it is clear*), convenit (*it is agreed upon*).

3. Verbs compounded with male, or satis, are followed by a
 Dat.: as,

Optimo viro maledixit. *He reviled a most excellent man.*

Mihi nunquam satisfecit. *He never satisfied me.*

4. Transitive verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante
 con (for cum), in, inter, ob (*on, against*), post, prae (*before*), sub
 (*under*), or super (*above*), often govern an Acc. of the direct and a
 Dat. of the indirect object: as,

Populus Romanus bellum Gallis intulit. *The Roman people
 made war on the Gauls.*

Note.—In the Pass. the direct object of the Act. becomes the
 subject, while the indirect object is still retained: as, Bellum Gallis
 a populo Romano illatum est. *War was made on the Gauls by the
 Roman people.*

5. Intransitive verbs compounded with the above-mentioned pre-
 positions, often govern the Dat.: as,

Caesar exercitui praefuit. *Caesar commanded the army.*

Consiliis consulis obstat. *He opposes the plans of the consul.*

6. The following is a useful list of verbs (other than those mention-
 ed) that govern the Dat.

Credo, *believe.*

Fido and

Confido, *trust (in a person).*

Faveo, *favor.*

Pareo, *obey.*

Nubo, *wed (of a woman).*

Studeo, *am zealous.*

Obsto, *stand in the way*

Impero, *command.*

Suadeo, *recommend.*

Persuadeo, *persuade.*

Irascor, *am angry.*

Tempero, *set bounds to,*

Subvenio, *aid.*

Ignosco, *pardon.*

Servio, *serve.*

Invideo, *envy.*

Indulgeo, *indulge.*

Placeo, *please.*

Displiceo, *displease.*

Repugno, *oppose.*

Immineo, *threaten.*

Occurro, *meet.*

Resisto, *resist.*

Noceo, *hurt.*

Medeor, *heal.*

7. The following verbs differ in meaning according as they govern the Dat. or Acc.:

Consulere aliquem. *Consult a person.*

Consulere alicui. *Consult a person's interest.*

Prospicere aliquid. *Foresee something.*

Prospicere alicui. *Provide for some one.*

Cavere (aliquem). *Be on one's guard against.*

Cavere (alicui). *Consult interest of.*

Moderari (aliquem). *Govern (some one).*

Moderari (alicui rei). *Set limits to (some thing).*

8. The verbs *do* (give) and *circumdo* (surround) have a double construction. Thus:

He surrounds the city with a wall. Urbem muro (abl.) circumdat, or Urbi murum circumdat.

They give him a crown. Eum corona (abl.) donant, or Ei (dat.) coronam donant.

9. The following are idiomatic uses of the Dat. with verbs:

Mortem alicui minari. *To threaten a person with death.*

Pecuniam alicui imperare. *To demand money from a person.*

Aliquid alicui probare. *Justify a thing to a person.*

Aliquid alicui suppeditare. *To supply one with something.*

Hunc tibi antepono. *I prefer this man to you.*

Hunc tibi posthabeo. *I prefer you to this man (lit., I reckon this man after you).*

10. Verbs that govern a Dat. can not be used personally in the passive; they are still joined with a Dat. and used impersonally: as,

Nemini a te invidetur. *No one is envied by you.*

Dicit divitibus invideri. *He says that the rich are envied (lit., that it is envied to the rich.)*

Ne illi quidem nocetur. *Not even he is injured.*

EXERCISE 6.

1. He fears for the safety of the country. 2. Everything threatens ^{omnia} us with death. 3. He used to say that everything threatened us with death. 4. My consulship did not please Antonius. 5. It is not a mark of wisdom for a man to revile men (*Inf.*). 6 I will recommend that most excellent course (*res*) to him. 7. They could not be angry with those whom they love. 8. He says that he will

consult us. 9. He cannot always consult his own interest. 10. He will prefer the safety of the country to everything. 11. No one was spared. 12. I believe that money has been demanded from almost (*paene*) all the states. 13. What pleases you, you do. 14. You will take away the power from the best of the citizens. 15. This peace will satisfy no one. 16. We cannot prefer him to you. 17. The idle man will some day repent of his idleness.

§ 7. THE ABLATIVE.

1. The Abl. without a preposition expresses *motion from* when joined with the name of a town or small island, or with *domus* or *rus*: as, *Roma profectus*, *having set out from Rome*. *Domo, rure exiit*, *he set out from home, from the country*.

In other cases, the preposition (*a*, or *de*) is usually expressed after Vbs. of motion, unless the motion is figurative: as,

De oppidis migrant. *They are migrating from the towns*.

Ab Italia decessit. *He departed from Italy*.

But (of figurative motion): *Oppugnatione desistunt*, *they desist from the attack*; *bello abstinuit*, *he abstained from war*; *civitatem dominatu liberavit*, *he delivered the country from despotism*.

This is called the *Abl. of Separation*.

2. The Abl. without a preposition is used after Adjs. meaning *free from*, *in want of*, *sprung from* (unless of remote origin): as, *Cura vacuus*, *free from care*; *parentibus orbus*, *bereft of parents*; *consulari familia ortus*, *sprung from a consular family*.

But, *Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis*. *Most of the Belgae are descended from the Germans*.

3. The Abl. is used to express *cause*, *manner*, *means* or *instrument*: as, *Eum, gladio interfecit*. *He killed him with a sword*.

Summa celeritate venient. *They will come with the utmost speed*.

Neglegentia punitur. *He is punished for carelessness*.

Note 1.—The agent after a passive verb, is usually expressed by *a* (or *ab*) with the Abl.—*ab* before vowels and consonants, *a* before consonants only: as, *Ab illis deserti sumus*, *we have been deserted by them*; *a (or ab) Caesare interfectus*, *killed by Caesar*. A secondary agent (one through whose instrumentality a thing is done) is expressed by *per* (with acc.): as, *Omnia haec per te facta sunt*. *All this was done through your instrumentality*.

Note 2.—Unless to express a mental state, the Abl. of *cause* is not common. Cause is usually expressed by *ob* or *propter* (with Acc.), *on account of*; by *causa* or *gratia* (with Gen.), *for the sake of*; and, of a negative cause, by *prae* (with Abl.): as, *Beatiores sunt propter illam scientiam, they are happier by reason of that knowledge*; *hoc rei publicae causa facit, he does it for the public interest*; *prae lacrimis loqui non potuit, he could not speak for tears*.

Note 3.—The Abl. of *manner* is not used unless there is an Adj. with the noun; otherwise the preposition *cum* (with Abl.) is to be used: as, *Hoc summa diligentia feci, I did it with the greatest care*. But, *Hoc cum diligentia feci, I did it with care*.

With the following very common nouns, *cum* may be omitted: *Consilio* (*from design*), *casu* (*by chance*), *iure* (*rightly*), *iniuria* (*wrongly*), *iussu* (*at the command of*), *iniussu* (*without the command of*).

Note 4.—The Abl. of *manner* is also used to specify that in respect to which a statement is true: as, *Homines non re sed nomine, men not in fact but in name*.

This is called the *Abl. of respect or specification*.

4. The Abl. is used to express *military accompaniment* or *attendant circumstance*: as,

Hoc praesidio profectus est. With this force he set out (only when with an Adj.)

Veneremur deos pura mente. Let us worship the gods with a pure heart.

In other cases *With*, when it means *together with*, is *cum* (+ Abl.): as,

Cum fratre veni. I came with my brother. *Cum febris, with a fever*; *cum telo, with a weapon*.

Note.—*Cum*, when used with a personal or relative pronoun, is written after its case: as, *Pax vobiscum, peace be with you*. *Quicum* is often written for *quocum*.

EXERCISE 7.

1. The letter was heard with great satisfaction.
2. He won the goodwill of all by his character.
3. He was killed by his own soldiers.
4. All have perished either (*aut*) by the sword or by pestilence.
5. I will say, with your permission (*pace*) that he acted with honesty.
6. He will come to our aid with a large army.
7. Born of the nobl-

est parents, he did not abstain from crime. 8. I have heard that he behaved (*se gero*) with the greatest kindness (*benevolentia*). 9. They could not hear him by reason of the clamor. 10. They say that he has been banished from Thebes (*Thebae*). 11. I regret that he could depart from Athens (*Athenae*) with resignation. 12. Some day they will be sorry for this thing. 13. All commerce (*mercatura*) was exempt from taxation (*vectigalia*). 14. Freed from this fear, he will depart from Italy in peace. 15. He set out by ship (*pl.*) from Brundisium.

§ 8. ABL. OF COMPARISON. ABL. OF DIFFERENCE. ABL. OF PRICE. ABL. OF TIME.

1. Instead of *quam* (*than*) after a comparative the Abl. is frequently found: as, *Patre melior est*, *He is better than his father*.

Note.—With a Rel. pronoun, the Abl. *must* be used and not *quam*: as, *Punicum bellum quo nullum maius fuit*. *The Punic War than which none was greater*.

2. Plus and amplius (*more*) and minus (*less*), when joined with numerals, are indeclinable and do not affect the case of the word to which they are joined: as,

Plus quingenti capti sunt. *More than five hundred were taken*.

Minus septingentos occiderunt. *They killed less than seven hundred*.

Plus tertia parte interfecta, se receperunt. *More than a third part being slain, they retreated*.

Plus annum tecum vixit. *He lived with you more than a year*.

Here the case following the comparative is the same as if no comparison were instituted.

3. Comparatives are often joined with *spe*, *opinione*, *expectatione*, *iusto* or *aequo* (*right*) *solito* (*usual*): as,

Serius *spe* omnium. *Later than all hoped*.

Celerius *opinione* venit. *He came sooner than was expected*.

Plus *aequo*. *More than right*.

4. An Abl. is added to comparatives to define the *Degree of difference* as,

Multo me senior. *Much older than I* (lit., by much).

So too paulo ante, *a little before*; paulo post, *a little later*.

5. The English *the . . . the* with two comparatives (Anglo Saxon instrumental case *by that . . . by that*) is expressed by *quanto . . . tanto* (*by how much . . . by so much*) or *quo . . . eo* (*by what . . . by that*), with two comparatives: as, *Quo quis melior est, eo beatior, the better one is, the happier he is.*

6. *Price*, when stated definitely and in a few words like *pretio*, (*at a price*), *auro* (*for gold*), is expressed by the Abl.: as,

Unam orationem viginti talentis vendidit. He sold one oration for twenty talents.

So too, *Religionem pecunia mutavit. He changed his religion for money.*

7. *Time at which* (time when), and *time within which*, are expressed by the Abl. without a preposition: as,

Hora sexta. at the sixth hour. Vere et aestate, in spring and summer.

Paucis diebus, within a few days.

Note 1.—The preposition in (with the Abl.) is used of time to express emphasis: as, *In tempore, at the right moment*; *in aetate protracta, in spite of advanced age.*

Note 2.—Words that do not strictly denote time, require a preposition: as, *In bello, in the war.* But when an Adj. is added, the preposition is omitted: as, *Bello Punico, in the Punic war.*

8. The Abl., like the Gen., is used to express a quality: as, *Vir summa virtute, a man of the highest courage.*

It is never used without an Adj. Thus *A man of courage* is *Vir virtute praeditus* or *vir fortis.*

9. The case *absolute* is in Latin the Abl. and not, as in English, the Nom.: as,

Urbe capta, copias reduxit. The city taken, he led back his forces.

EXERCISE 8.

1. She sold her husband's (*vir*) life for gold.
2. Your house is larger than ours.
3. He is braver than I.
4. He used to say that nothing was sweeter than the light of truth.
5. He could have been much happier than he was.
6. He has bought immortality with death.
7. The Sun is many times (*use pars*) larger than the Earth.
8. On the same night, on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana was burnt.
9. They will destroy (*everto*) that city within the next (*hic*) three years.
10. They always built ships in time of peace.

11. The more you have, the better. 12. I believe that in appearance (*species*) the city is free. 13. He is an old man in body; he will never become old in mind. 14. They came here at night; at dawn they departed. 15. He said that he would send the money within a few days. 16. The war finished (*Abl. abs.*), I will return home.

§ 9. ABL. OF PLACE. LOCATIVE.

1. At a place (place where) was originally expressed by a separate case in -i (pl. -is). This case is called the *Locative*; it is seen in: Domi (at home), ruri (in the country), humi (on the ground).

2. To express *at* or *in a place*, when the noun is the name of a town or small island, the locative takes the following forms: If the noun was of the I or II Decl. Sing., the Locative takes the form of the Gen.; if not, of the Abl.: as,

Romae (at Rome), Rhodi (at Rhodes), Tibure (at Tibur), Athenis (at Athens.)

3. To express *at* or *in a place*, when the noun is not the name of a town or small island, in with the Abl. is used: as,

In urbe. In the city. In Italia. In Italy.

But, if there is an Adj. with the noun, the preposition is often omitted: as,

Media urbe, in the middle of the city. Tota Italia, in the whole of Italy.

4. An Adj. cannot be joined to a noun in the locative case. Thus: Tota Corintho (not totius Corinthi), in the whole of Corinth.

The possessive Adj. may however be added to domi: as,

Domi meae. In my house. But, Vetere domo, in the old house. So too, Domum meam, to my house; but Ad veterem domum, to the old home.

5. For phrases like In the city of Rome, the preposition is required: as,

In urbe Athenis diu domicilium habebat. He lived long in the city of Athens.

Antiochiae, in urbe opulentissima, moratus est. He delayed in the wealthy city of Antioch.

So too: Ab Italia domo iit. He went from his home in Italy.

Ad urbem Romam legati missi sunt. *Ambassadors were sent to the city of Rome.*

Rhodium ad patrem venit. *He came to his father at Rhodes.*

6. *Motion along* is expressed by the Abl.: as,

Ibam forte Via Sacra. *I chanced to be going along the Via Sacra.*

A Table of the common uses of the Abl. is appended.

COMMON USES OF THE ABL.

1. ABL. OF SEPARATION. Metu liberatus, *freed from fear* (figurative). Roma profectus, *having set out from Rome.*
2. ABL. OF INSTRUMENT. Gladio interfectus, *killed with the sword.*
3. ABL. OF MANNER. Summa diligentia, *with the utmost care*, (not often used without an Adj.; cum celeritate, *with speed.*)
4. ABL. OF SPECIFICATION. Homines non re sed nomine, *men not in fact but in name.*
5. ABL. OF CAUSE. Timore concidit, *he collapsed from fear* (prep. ob or propter more common).
6. ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. Anno senior, *older by a year.*
7. ABL. OF QUALITY. Vir summo ingenio, *a man of the highest ability* (always with an Adj.).
8. ABL. OF PRICE. Regna vendit pecunia, *he sells kingdoms for money.*
9. ABL. OF COMPARISON. Nihil est melius virtute, *nothing is better than virtue* (always when with a Rel.).
10. ABL. OF PLACE. Media urbe, *in the middle of the city* (usually with an Adj.).
11. ABL. OF TIME. Postero die abiit, *next day he went off.* His decem diebus, *within the last ten days.*
12. ABL. OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE. His ominibus proficiscere, *set out with these omens.*
13. ABL. ABSOLUTE. Deo volente, *God willing.*

EXERCISE 9.

1. He will spend (*ago*) his life in this city. 2. They said that he would soon come to Italy. 3. He preferred to live at Rhodes. 4. What place in the whole sea was safe? 5. The army will set out for its winter-quarters in Gaul. 6. He said that you would never remain in his house. 7. He lived at first at Carthage and afterwards at Athens. 8. You will not find braver men than these in the whole of Italy. 9. He has come here from the camp at Aricia. 10. I believe that he has studied in the learned city of Athens. 11. He was a man of great strength. 12. He set out from Rome where he had dwelt in the middle of the city. 13. Freed from the fear of war, the nation was able to drive all bad citizens from its borders. 14. He was thrown into prison by the tribune where he soon died of hunger. 15. Many things are more useful than money. 16. I do not think this thing dear at ten cents (*as, assis*).

§ 10. ABLATIVE WITH VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

1. The verbs *utor* (*use*), *fruor* (*enjoy*), *fungor* (*perform*), *potior* (*get possession of*), *vescor* (*feed on*), *dignor* (*deem worthy*), govern the Abl.: *as*,

Viribus male utuntur. They make a bad use of their strength.

Urbe potitus est. He got possession of the city.

Note.—*Potior* often governs the Gen.: *as*, *Rerum potitus, when master of affairs.*

2. *Careo* (*be without*), *egeo* and *indigeo* (*need*), also govern the Abl.: *as*,

Sensu caret, he is devoid of feeling. Pane eget, he is in need of bread.

Note.—*Egeo* and *indigeo* (*need*), govern also a Gen.: *as*, *Pecuniae indiget, he is in need of money.*

3. *Opus est* and *usus est* (*there is need*), take a Dat. of the *person* to whom and the Abl. of the *thing*: *as*,

Quid tibi opus est verbis? What need have you of words?

So: *Opus est consulto, properato. There is need of deliberation, haste.*

4. The following verbs are also followed by an Abl.: *Fido* and *confido* (*rely on*); *glorior* (*boast of*), *doleo* (*feel grief at*), *gaudeo* (*delight in*): *as*,

Natura loci confidit. *He relies on the nature of the ground.*

Casu meo gaudent. *They feel joy at my disaster.*

Note 1.—These verbs may also take a neuter pronoun in the Acc.:
as, Hoc gloriatur, *he makes this boast.*

Note 2.—Fido and confido take the Dat. of the *person*, but the Abl. of the *thing*: as, Non tibi sed exercitu meo confido, *I do not trust in you but in my army.*

5. The Abl. is used after the Adjs. dignus (*worthy of*), indignus (*unworthy of*), fretus (*relying on*), praeditus (*endowed with*), contentus (*content with*) and plenus (*full of*): as,

Poena dignus, *worthy of punishment.* Fretus praesidio tuo, *relying on your protection.* Virtute praeditus, *endowed with courage.* Plenus ira (or irae), *full of anger.*

EXERCISE 10.

1. He has filled the world with good things. 2 You do not know how to use a victory. 3. I shall perform an idle (*vanus*) office. 4. They used to live on milk. 5. I believe that he performed the duties of his office with fidelity and courage. 6. They are now without bread. 7. Use your opportunities and you will soon be worthy of honor. 8. I was considered (*habeo*) more like him than you are. 9. They hope to make themselves masters of the whole of Gaul (*Gen.*). 10. He will take the city at the first onslaught. 11. In this way (*modus*) he will show that he is braver than they. 12. A man of the highest ability, he was considered unworthy of the lowest office. 13. He used to say that you could not buy friends with gold. 14. They have enjoyed (*utor*) peace for many years. 15. You wish to enjoy (*fruor*) life, do (*fungor*) your duty. 16. Show yourselves worthy of your liberty. 17. You do not lack skill (*ars*) so much as energy (*industria*).

§ 11. INTERROGATIVE FORMS.

1. Interrogative sentences in Latin (when not introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb) are usually distinguished by one of the interrogative particles, -ne, nonne, num. The order of words does not, as in English, mark an interrog. sentence.

2. The particle *-ne* is appended to the most emphatic word in the sentence (which is, therefore, put first): as,

Omnisne pecunia dissipata est? *Is all the money squandered?*

Note.—*Yes* or *No* (in answer to a question) is expressed by repeating the verb: as,

Amatne? *Does he love?* Amat, *Yes.* Non amat, *No.*

3. Nonne expects the answer *Yes*: as, Nonne puer amat? *Does not the boy love?* The answer expected is, Amat, *he loves* (i.e., *Yes*).

4. Num expects the answer *No*: as, Num puer amat? *Does the boy love?* or *The boy does not love, does he?* The answer expected is Non amat, *he does not love*, (i.e., *No*).

5. The following are the more common interrogative pronouns and adverbs:

Quis (or quisnam), *who?*

Quo, *whither?*

Uter, *which of the two?*

Quando, *when?* (Cum is never interrogative.)

Quantus, *how great?*

Qui, *how?*

Quotus, *which in the series?*

Quot, *how many?*

Quam (with adj. or adv.), *how?*

Qualis, *what kind?*

Quemadmodum, } *how?*
or quomodo, }

Ubi, *where?*

Unde, *whence?*

Quoties, *how often?*

Cur, }

Quamdiu, *how long?*

Quare, }

Quousque, *how far?*

Quamobrem, }

why?

Thus:—

Quis es? *Who are you?* Quota hora est? *What o'clock is it?*

Cur id rogas? *Why do you ask that?*

Quae tandem causa te impellit? *What motive, pray, impels you?*

Quisnam hoc fecit? *Who, pray, has done this?* Nam joined to quis, adds the idea of *impatience*.

Quod facinus admisit? *What crime has he committed?*

Note.—Quod is the adjectival form of quid, *what?* If quid were used, it would take the Gen.: as, Quid facinoris admisit?

6. Whether . . . or (in a double question) is utrum . . . an; whether . . . or not, utrum . . . an non as,

Utrum Pallas hoc fecit an Iuno? (*Whether*) *has Pallas done this or Juno?*

Utrum haec vera sunt an non? (*Whether*) *is this true or not?*

Note.—Utrum is sometimes omitted, sometimes replaced by the enclitic -ne: as, Hoc an illud fecisti? *Did you do this or that?* Nostine me an ignoras? *Do you know me or don't you know me?*

7. An abrupt rhetorical question is often introduced by an: as, An servi esse vultis? *Can it be that you want to be slaves?*

EXERCISE II.

1. Which of you two was present in that battle? 2. Who gave you the book? 3. Do you think that he will be sorry? 4. Do you say that he is unwilling to obey? 5. Will he come here to-day or to-morrow? 6. Are those your words or not? 7. Have you forgotten your injuries? 8. Why do you ask a thing so foolish? 9. How do you know all this? 10. Does he know the glory of such virtue? 11. Do you think that death is an eternal sleep? 12. Who was milder than he? 13. Where are you going? Where are you coming from? 14. When will they do it? 15. Does not the sun shine (*luceat* even for the wicked? 16. Whether is it water or wine? 17. How many ships can they muster (*cogo*)? 18. How bravely they died!

§ 12. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

1. The case of a Rel. Pron. is determined by the verb of its own clause; its gender, number and person by the antecedent: as,

Ego, qui te laudo, rex sum. *I, who praise you, am king.*

Ego, quem tu laudas, rex sum. *I, whom you praise, am king.*

2. The relative —so often omitted in English—is never omitted in Latin: as,

Artem, quam novi, exerceo. *I practise the art I know.*

3. A relative may agree with the predicate of its own clause instead of with the antecedent: as,

Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est. *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

4. The relative, like the Adj., when referring to one or more nouns of different gender, may agree with the last: as,

Neque homini neque ferac, quam semel conspiciunt, parant. *They spare neither man nor beast that they once see.*

Note.—Other forms of agreement are common: as, *Pater et mater qui mortui sunt.* *Father and mother who were dead* (plural, and agreeing with masculine rather than feminine).

Inconstantia et temeritas quae digna non sunt deo. *Fickleness and rashness which are not worthy of a god* (Neut. Pl., because the antecedents are the names of things).

5. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is often omitted: as,

Dividebat agros quibus volebat. *He distributed lands to those to whom he wished.*

6. When the antecedent is emphatic, the Rel. clause is thrown forward and the main clause introduced by *is* or *idem* (*same*): as,

Qui id fecit, is abiit. *The man who did it, is gone.*

The antecedent (when a noun) is in that case put in the Rel. clause: as,

Quos campos viridissimos videram, eosdem vastatos vidi. *I saw the fields desolate, which I had seen very green.*

7. A superlative referring to the antecedent is often put in the Rel. clause: as,

Urbem, quam habebant optimam, perdiderunt. *They have lost the best city they had.*

So too, emphatic Adjs. of number and amount: as,

Duces arripiunt, qui pauci supersunt. *They seize the leaders, few of whom survive.*

8. A noun used appositively as an antecedent, is attracted into the Rel. clause: as,

Abiit Roma, qua in urbe a puero habitaverat. *He departed from Rome, a city in which he had lived from boyhood.*

9. A relative referring to a whole sentence is expressed by *id quod* or *quae res*: as,

Invidiam vicisti, id quod difficillimum est (or *quae res difficillima est*). *You have vanquished envy, which is a most difficult thing to do.*

10. *What*, as a relative, is translated by *id quod* or *ea quae* (*that which, the things which*): as,

Ea, quae recta sunt, laudantur. *What is right, is praised.*

11. Pronouns and Adjs. are often followed by a corresponding Rel. Pron. These are called correlatives. Thus :—

Idem . . . qui, the same . . . as; talis . . . qualis, such as; tantus . . . quantus, as great as; tot . . . quot, as many as; as,

Idem est qui semper fuit. *He is the same as he always was.*
 Res eodem statu quo antea stat. *The matter stands in the same position as before.*

Talis est qualis semper fuit. *He is of the same character as he always was.*

Tantam voluptatem habeo quantam tu. *I have as much pleasure as you.*

Tot erant milites quot fluctus maris. *The soldiers were as many as the waves of the sea.*

Note.—The adverbs *such, so* (limiting Adjs. or Advs.) are expressed by *tam*: *as, Tam bonus homo. Such a good man.*

As good as you. Tam bonus quam tu.

12. The Adjs. *primus* (*first*), *ultimus* (*last*), *solus* and *unus* (*alone*), are used adverbially in Latin, where in English they are used as predicates of a Rel. clause or joined to an Inf.: *as,*

Primus mala nostra sensit. He was the first who perceived our evils.

Primus venit; ultimus abiit. He was the first to come and the last to go.

13. For the the Syntax of the Rel. clause in Indir. Narration, see §4.3.

EXERCISE 12.

1. I have never seen as large a meeting (*concio*) as this is. 2. I will show you such a battle as you have never seen before. 3. He who easily believes, is easily deceived. 4. What is crooked (*curvus*) is base. 5. That part of the nation which had made war was punished (invert Rel.). 6. We miss (*desidero*) Pompey who was the light of Italy. 7. May you also enjoy that fortune and honor which come alike to all! 8. The few ships he had, he sent away. 9. He says that he will send them the best horseman he has. 10. How have you been able to build cities as large as these? 11. I believe that he was the first to call down philosophy from heaven. 12. No one even dared to wish for as much as heaven (say *the gods*) has bestowed upon us (*defero ad*). 13. He says that the good citizen is the man that loves his country. 14. He says he admires the animal that is called man. 15. The more clever (*callidus*) a man is, the more, as a usual thing (*fere*), he is distrusted (*difido* + *Dat.*)

§ 13. THE IMPERATIVE, THE NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

1. *Commands* are expressed by the Imperative: as *Audite hoc, hear this.* The negative particle is *Ne*: as,

Nimium ne crede colori. Do not trust too much to your complexion.

2. Instead of *Ne* with the Imperative, which is used mainly in poetry, Latin uses in *prohibitions*:

(a) *Ne + Pres. Subjun.*: as, *Ne multa discas sed multum, Do not learn many things but much.*

(b) *Ne + Perf. Subjun.*: as, *Ne flumen transieris, Do not cross the river.*

(c) *Noli (Pl. nolite) + Pres. Inf.*: as, *Noli id facere, Do not do it.* Note. The last is the common form in Cicero.

3. Or (and not) in Neg. Imperatives is *neve (neu)*: as, *Illud ne feceris neve dixeris. Do not do or say that.*

Sequere neve retrospexeris. Follow and do not look back.

4. The imperatives of *facio* and *curo* are also used in commands: as, *Fac (cura) ut id sciam. Take care that I know that (let me know it.)*

5. The Imperative in *-to (Pl. -tote)* is used where there is distinct reference to the future: as,

Mortuum in urbe ne sepelito. Thou shall not bury a dead man in the city.

Servus meus liber esto. Let my slave be free.

It is chiefly used in Wills and Laws.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

6. The Subjun. is used in simple sentences:

(a) In *Wishes*: as, *Moriar, May I die! Felix sis, May you be fortunate!*

The negative is *ne*: as, *Ne vivam si scio. May I not live if I know!*

(b) In *Commands* or *Exhortations*: as, *Ne abeat, let him not go away.* The negative is *Ne*.

(c) To soften an assertion: as,

Velim ignoscas (ut omitted). I should like you to pardon.

Mallem te videre. I should prefer to see you.

Crederes. You would have believed.

Hoc dixerim. This I would have said.

(d) In questions that imply *deliberation*: as,
 Quid faciam? *What am I to do? (What shall I do?)*
 Quid facerem? *What was I to have done?*

It is called the *deliberative subjunctive*. It is often introduced by an: as,

An ego non venirem? *Ought I not to have come?*

7. When the subjunctive is used in *wishes*, utinam (*Oh! that. would that!*) is usually added. It is used as follows:—

When the fulfilment of the wish is possible, utinam is joined with the present or perfect Subjun.: as,

Utinam adsit. *Oh! that he may be there (in the future).*

Utinam adfuert. *Oh! that he may have been there (just now).*

When the wish can no longer be realised, the Imperfect or Pluper. Subjun. is used: the Imperf. when the wish is referred to the present, the Pluper. when it is referred to the past: as,

Utinam adesset. *Oh! that he were here (now).*

Utinam adfuisset. *Oh! that he had been here (in the past).*

The negative is ne (rarely non): as,

Utinam ne hoc in mentem incidisset. *Would that it had not occurred to my mind!*

EXERCISE 13.

1. Go away; depart from this city. 2. Let us not lose such an opportunity. 3. Thou shalt not kill. 4. Would that he were now alive! 5. You would have thought them vanquished. 6. Do not be troublesome. 7. I believe that he was buried in the same tomb in which his father lies. 8. Do not praise the wicked. 9. May all such citizens perish! 10. Why should I enumerate the multitude of their ships? 11. See that you write me soon. 12. Oh! that I had been living in those days. 13. I should like you to come to Rome immediately. 14. Oh! that I could find him. 15. Let us remember that life is short. 16. Do not lay (*confero*) the blame on (*in*) me. 17. Oh! that he may listen to (*audio*) you. 18. Restrain (*coerceo*) thy tongue, so shalt thou be able to restrain thy temper (*animus*) also.

§ 14. THE TENSES.

1. The Latin Present is used for both the English Pres. Indefinite and the Progressive Pres.: as, Scribo, *I write or I am writing.*

Note.—With Adv. of past time extending up to the present, it is used for the Eng. *past*: as,

Iam diu cupio te visere. I have long been wishing to see you.

2. The Imperf. expresses an action going on in past time: as, *Saxa in eos devolvebant. They were rolling down stones on them.*

It is, therefore, used to express *repeated, continuous, or habitual* action: as,

Hunc saepe audiebant. They often heard him.

Hic ara vetus stabat. Here an old altar used to stand.

Consilium mutavit; videbat enim nihil confici posse. He changed his plan; for he saw that nothing could be done (imperfect of continuous action.)

3. The impf. has, therefore, often the force of the Eng. *began, attempted*: as, *Ad proelium sese expediebant, they began to prepare themselves for battle; urbem servabam, I was trying to save the city.*

4. The Latin Perf. represents both the Eng. Pres. Perf. (Perf. with *has*) and the English past indefinite: as,
Scripsi. I wrote, or I have written.

With *postquam, ubi, cum primum, ut primum, ut, simul ac* (or before a vowel, *atque*) it is used for the English Pluper. with *when, after (that), as soon as*: as,

Postquam haec audivit, abiit. After he had heard this, he went away.

5. The Fut. represents an action as going on, and the Fut.-Perf. an action as complete, in future time: as,

Scribam, I shall write; scripsero, I shall have written.

After *when, if, etc.*, English often uses the Pres. tense referring to the future: as, *I will send him, when he comes.* In such a case Latin requires the Fut., or—if the action of one verb is represented as over before that of the other begins—the Fut.-Perf.: as, *Eum mittam cum redibit or (redierit). I will send him, when he comes.*

In fact, when there is a Fut. in the main clause, there is usually a Fut. or Fut.-Perf. in the subordinate clause: as, *Haec civitas, dum erit, eum laudabit. This country, while it exists, will praise him.*

CLASSIFICATION OF TENSES.

6. Latin tenses are divided into *Primary* and *Secondary* (or *Historical*), as follows:—

Primary Tenses.	{ Pres.,	Amat, <i>he loves.</i>
	{ Perf.	Amavit, <i>he has loved.</i>
	{ Fut.	Amabit, <i>he will love.</i>
Secondary (or Historical) Tenses.	{ Fut. Perf.	Amaverit, <i>he will have loved.</i>
	{ Imperf.,	Amabat, <i>he was loving.</i>
	{ Perf.	Amavit, <i>he loved.</i>
	{ Pluperf.	Amaverat, <i>he had loved.</i>

EXERCISE 14.

1. You will do it when you please (*volo*). 2. When it is ordered it will be done. 3. After he had left the city, he fled to his father. 4. Philosophy flourished in Greece. 5. Whenever he came to a town, he shut himself in his litter. 6. I have long known that he was a fool. 7. Let those come who are (will be) able. 8. I had long thought that it could never happen. 9. They tried to prevent (*prohibeo*) our soldiers. 10. Whatever you do, I shall approve. 11. I will not leave you alive; you shall die under the rod (*abl.*). 12. Whatever is about to be, will be (*fit*). 13. They came up to our aid (*dat.*), and took the hill. 14. I have promised money to one power to another (*alter*). 15. You will carry all these things to Rome. 16. Next year these same people were betraying their city. 17. They used often to contend with (*cum*) the bravest of the German tribes. 18. Let us go and render thanks (*gratias agere*) to the gods. 19. I shall not see him again (*rursus*), unless (*nisi*) he returns (*fut.*).

§ 15. THE SUPINE, GERUND, GERUNDIVE, AND PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

1. Latin verbs have two Supines, one in -um and one in -u: as, *Amatum to love; amatu, to be loved.*

2. The Supine in -um denotes *purpose*, and is used only after verbs of *motion*: as,

Legatos mittunt pacem petitur. *They send ambassadors to sue for peace.*

3. The Supine in -u is used with a few Adjs. like *mirabile* (*wonderful*), *facile*, *difficile*, *incredibile*, etc. and with *fas* (*right*), *nefas* (*wrong*): as,

Mirabile dictu, *wonderful to say*; *nefas est dictu*, *it is impiety to say it*.

Note.—The supines in -u in common use are: *Dictu*, *factu*, *visu*, *cognitu* (*to be learnt*).

4. The *Gerund* is a verbal noun of the II Decl.: as, *Docendo discimus*. *We learn by teaching*.

It is not used in the Nom., which is supplied by the Inf.: as, *Videre est credere*. *Seeing is believing*.

5. The *Gerundive* is a verbal Adj. with a Pass. meaning (possibly a Fut. Part. Pass.), as:

Hostis timendus. *An enemy to be feared*.

It is generally used for the Gerund, where the Gerund (if used) would be followed by an Acc., as:

Docendis viris discimus. *We learn by teaching men* (lit., *by men to be taught*: for *docendo viros*).

Note.—If the verb governs the Dat., the Gerund and not the Gerundive is to be used: as, *Pauperibus subveniendo*. *By aiding the poor*.

6. The Gerundive is used idiomatically to express *purpose* after a few verbs like *give* (do), *give up* (trado), *have done* (curo), *mark out* (denoto), *hire out* (loco): as,

Multos necandos denotavit. *He marked out many for death* (lit. *to be killed*). *Aedem Victoriae faciendam curavit*. *He had a temple of victory built*.

7. The Gerundive is used, with the verb, *to be*, to form a whole Conjugation (called the *passive periphrastic*), as:

Monendus sum. *I must be or, ought to be warned*.

Monendus eram. *I ought to have been warned*.

This is the common way to express *duty*, *propriety*, or *necessity*: as, *Aqua nobis bibenda est*. *We must drink water* (lit., *water must be drunk by us*).

The agent is expressed by the Dat.

8. Intransitive verbs must be used in the Pass. Periphrastic impersonally: as, *Omnibus moriendum est*, *all must die*; *rebus pacto standum est*, *we must stand by the pact*.

9. If a verb governs a Dat., the Pass. Periphrastic is (in accordance with rule) Impersonal, as:

Inimicis a nobis parcendum est. *We should spare our enemies (= it should be spared to our enemies by us).*

The agent is then expressed by a (or ab) + Abl.

10. The Gerundive and Pass. Periphrastic of deponent verbs are Pass. as in other verbs, and, in the case of verbs that govern the Abl. (*fruor, utor, fungor*, etc.), may be used either personally or impersonally: as, *Haec nobis fruenda sunt. These things must be enjoyed by us.*

Utendum est iudicio. *We must use our judgment.*

11. The Gen. of the Gerund or of the Gerundive, is often used to express *purpose*, with *causa*, *for the sake of*, which is written after its case: as,

Huc querendi causa venerunt. *They have come here for the purpose of complaining.*

Vestis est frigoris depellendi causa. *Dress is intended for keeping off cold (lit., is for the sake of, etc.).*

12. The Gerund, and not the Gerundive, is to be used: (a) With verbs that govern the Dat.: as, *Parcendo inimicis, by sparing enemies.* (b) Where euphony would be violated: as, *Amicos videndi causa. For the sake of seeing friends (not amicorum videndorum causa).* The rule is often violated. (c) Where ambiguity results: as, *Aliquid docendi causa. For the sake of teaching something (not alicuius, which would mean some one).*

EXERCISE 15.

1. Then came the day for passing (*fero*) the law. 2. We should fight for our country. 3. We shall have to fight. 4. He was very active in cutting down the enemy. 5. He imported wine into Gaul in order to tempt (*illicio*) the Gauls into Italy. 6. He was responsible (*auctor esse* + Gen.) for the attack on this city. 7. Rome must defend her allies. 8. We ought to march (*eo*) on Rome. 9. You must labor to preserve us from disaster (*clades*). 10. We must consult the interests of these people. 11. They ought to have been ejected from the city. 12. The Senate thought that the thing should be rejected (*reicio*). 13. You will do more good by sparing them

than by killing them. 14. By assigning (*tribuo*) to each man his own, he restored peace. 15. The business of tilling the soil seemed to him the pursuit (*studium*) of kings.

§ 16. THE PARTICIPLE.

1. The participle has partly the nature of a verb and partly that of an Adj. Hence the name (*pars* and *capiō*). Like a verb, it has voice, tense, and number, and governs the same case as the verb from which it is formed; like an Adj., it has declension and gender and agrees with nouns.

2. Transitive verbs have in Latin three participles:

(a) A *Pres. participle Act.*: as, *amans*, *loving*.

(b) A *Fut. participle Act.*: as, *amaturus*, *about to love*.

(c) A *Perf. participle Pass.*: as, *amatus*, *loved, having been loved*.

3. The Latin participle is used to express an English clause introduced by *who, when, while, as, if, though, because*: as,

Non parcimus resistentibus. *We do not spare those who resist us.*

Epistola ad me scribentem venit. *The letter came to me when (while, as) I was writing.*

Eis vei morientibus non ignosceat. *He will not forgive them, even though (if) they are dying.*

Caesar haec veritus, suos eduxit. *Caesar, because he was afraid of this, led out his men.*

This is one of the most important features of Latin syntax. The principle may be stated as follows:—The Latin Part., apart from its adjectival force, is used to express the adverbial relations of *time, condition, cause, concession, or attendant circumstance*.

4. The Latin Part. must frequently be translated into English by a main verb: as,

Eum arreptum Romam trahebant. *They seized him and began to drag him to Rome.*

Ingressus consedit. *He entered and sat down.*

This is also a most important principle and, taken in connection with that of paragraph 3, largely accounts for the compactness of the Latin sentence.

5. The *Pres. Part.*, used strictly, denotes time contemporaneous with that of the main verb: as,

Hoc dixit moriens. *This he said while dying.*

It is often, however,—especially in the oblique cases—used in a more general sense: as,

Pugnantium clamor. *The shouting of combatants.*

Note.—The Abl. of the Gerund is used by Cicero and Livy instead of the Pres. Part: as,

Laniando dentibus hostem exspiravit. *Mangling his enemy with his teeth, he expired.*

6. Of Latin verbs, deponents alone have a Perf. Part. Act. Thus: *Locutus* is *having spoken*, and *secutus*, *having followed*; but *victus* is not *having conquered*, but *having been conquered*; *auditus* is not *having heard*, but *having been heard*.

In place of the Perf. Part. Act., which is wanting, Latin uses generally the Perf. Part. Pass. absolutely: as,

Urbe capta, abiit. *Having taken the city, he withdrew* (lit., *the city taken*).

The Abl. is—as has been remarked—the case absolute in Latin, and the use of the *abl. abs.* for the Perf. Part. Act. accounts for its common occurrence in Latin authors.

7. The Perf. Part. Pass. is often used with a noun or an abstract or verbal noun: as, *Ab urbe condita*, *from the foundation of the city*; *post expulsum patrem*, *after the expulsion of the father*.

8. A demonstrative pronoun is not joined, as in English, to the Part. Thus: *Those doing this, will be punished*, is *Qui hoc facient, poenas dabunt* (not *ii facientes*).

EXERCISE 16.

1. He bound the captives and set them in the midst. 2. I spoke these words to you as you were standing by (*adsto*). 3. He composed songs and recited them to the army. 4. On departing, he put me at the head of (*præficio*) the army. 5. It is said that he was killed while sailing to Africa. 6. Most of them were seen while returning to their camp. 7. These evils must be cured. 8. You will find the enemy shut in between the mountains and the sea. 9. Having divided the booty among them, they went home. 10. Many books have been written on despising glory. 11. He will attack you while you are crossing the river. 12. I believe that he will give up (*dedo*) his province and return immediately. 13. Many are prudent in selecting horses but imprudent in selecting friends. 14. We do not believe a liar (*mendax*), even if he speak the truth.

§ 17. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

1. The Abl.—as has been said—is the *case absolute* in Latin and the Abl. absolute is the common form used to express the Perf. Part. Act. of all but deponent verbs: as,

Hoc audito, ad castra rediit. Having heard this, he returned to the camp.

Note. Other substitutes are: (a) Cum + the Pluperf. Subj. (b) Postquam + Perf. Ind.

The Abl. Abs. is also used for the Eng. Pres. Part. Act. used—as it so often is—for the Perf.: as, *Hoc consilio capto, subito abiit. Forming this design, he suddenly departed.*

2. The Abl. Abs. is used, in translating into Latin, to express an English main clause or an adv. clause of *time, cause, condition, concession, or attendant circumstance*, when these would naturally be represented by a Perf. Part. Act.: Thus:—

They charged and defeated them. Impetu facto, eos vicerunt (Abl. Abs. for main clause).

Caesar when he had learned this, returned to the senate-house. Caesar, hoc cognito, ad curiam rediit (time).

Though everything is lost, courage remains. Perditis omnibus rebus, virtus manet (concession).

As the general had been killed, they fled. Imperatore interfecto, diffugerunt (cause).

Note.—The Abl. Abs. is placed at or near the beginning of the sentence. It should not include more than a noun and Part., or a noun, Part., and Obj.: as, *Me haec verba dicente, abiit. As (while) I was saying these words, he went away.*

3. Th Abl. Abs. must introduce a new subject. Thus:

The enemy, as they were retreating, laid waste the land. Hostes, se recipientes, agros vastabant (not *hostibus se recipientibus*).

Manlius, having killed a Gaul, despoiled him. Manlius Gallum caesum spoliavit (not *caeso Gallo, eum spoliavit*).

The Abl. Abs. would here be wrong because the nouns (*hostes* and *Gallum*), which would naturally be in the Abl. Abs., are required in the sentence, one in the Nom. and the other in the Acc.

4. As the verb *Esse* has no Pres. Part., a noun in the Abl. Abs. is joined predicatively to an Adj. or another noun: as,

Vivis fratribus. *In his brothers' life-time (i.e., his brothers being alive).*

Salvis legibus. *Without violation of the laws (i.e., the laws safe).*

Te duce. *Under your command (you being leader).*

Te invito. *Against your will (you being unwilling).*

Re infecta. *Without success (the thing being undone).*

Duce non expectato. *Without waiting for a guide.*

5. The following uses of the Abl. Abs. should be noticed:

Bruto consule. *In the consulship of Brutus.*

Suadente Gaio. *By the advice of Gaius.*

Adiuvantibus Gallis. *With the assistance of the Gauls.*

Te non adiuvante. *Without your assistance.*

Caesare necato. *After the killing of Caesar.*

Te repugnante. *In spite of your opposition.*

EXERCISE 17.

1. After wasting the land, they returned.
2. On receiving the letter, he left the city.
3. The money was paid in my presence.
4. They came to Italy, I believe, during the reign of Romulus.
5. Will he go away without consulting any one?
6. The enemy were disturbed by our arrival and we immediately attacked the camp.
7. On the defeat of their army, the city surrendered.
8. When he had spoken thus, the ambassadors withdrew.
9. He promised not to fight against my will.
10. When the war is ended, we shall restore our prisoners.
11. He was unwilling, in the absence of the first legion, to join battle.
12. This victory he gained with very few wounded.
13. He called his friends together and killed himself.
14. A gate was opened and they sallied forth.
15. He called the merchants together and consulted them.
16. They set out when the winter was not yet ended.
17. On the approach of summer they begin to sail the sea.
18. He ought to have told us when he would return.
19. I should have restored you the money.

§ 18. THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE AND THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

1. The Fut. Part. Act. expresses *futurity and intention*: as,
Venio agros visurus. *I come to see the fields.*

Note.—This use is more common in poetry than in prose writers.

2. From the Fut. Part. Act. and the verb *to be*, is formed a whole conjugation called the Act. Periphrastic Conjugation. Thus:

Amaturus sum. I am about to love (or I intend to love).

Amaturus eram (fui). I was about to love (or I intended to love).
Etc.

This conjugation supplies the place of the Fut. Subjun. Act. which is wanting: as, *Rogo quid facturus sis. I ask what you will do.*

Note.—The verb of an interrogative sentence, when dependent upon a verb of asking or the like, is in the subjun. and is called an indirect or dependent question.

EXERCISE 18.

1. Does he intend to try (*tento*) the chances of war again? 2. Do you intend to seek the same office (*honor*) as before? 3. Tell me why you are about to attempt that. 4. Many birds, when seeking a warmer climate (*loca*), will even cross the sea. 5. I believe that they took the city and set it on fire (use *ignem inicio*). 6. Why do you remain in office so long against the wish of your fellow-citizens? 7. Though defeated and almost crushed (*opprimo*) he was still reigning. 8. Leaving his province, he soon returned home. 9. These provinces lost, your revenues (*vectigalia*) will be lost. 10. Despoiled (*privo*) of his sovereignty, he will repair (*peto*) to some other land. 11. When your merchants had been badly treated (*tracto*) by another nation, you made war upon it. 12. A judge ought to favor nobody? 13. The weather (*tempestas*) is not fit for sailing. 14. When you have done your work (*Abl. Abs.*) you must help me. 15. Do you not intend to keep the allies free from fear? 16. The ox was given us for ploughing (*causa*). 17. He said that he was about to speak upon the character (*mores*) of the man. 18. This nation, before the gift of citizenship, injured us greatly.

§ 19. UT-CLAUSE WITH VERBS OF ASKING.

1. Verbs meaning *to ask*, *command*, or *advise*, are followed by an *ut*-clause (with the Subjun.) and not, as in English, by the Inf.: as, *Rogo te ut id facias. I ask you to do it.*

Imperat ut clipeos percutiant. He orders them to strike their shields.



Moneo te ut aurum reddas. *I warn you to restore the gold.*

Note.—Iubeo (*order*), and veto (*forbid*), take the Inf. and not the ut-clause: as, Eos pedem referre iussit (vetuit). *He ordered (forbade) them to retreat.*

2. After a Secondary tense (§14.6) the verb of the ut-clause becomes Imperf.: as,

Rogavi ut id faceres. *I asked you to do it.*

Imperavit ut clipeos percuterent. *He ordered them to strike their shields.*

This is called *Secondary Sequence* and is a principle of general application.

Note.—The historical Pres. and the Pres. Perf. are frequently however, regarded as Secondary tenses (§14.6): as,

Quid petens? Ut servires? *Seeking for what? To be a slave?*

Rogavi eos ut emerent. *I have asked them to buy.*

3. When *Not* is required in the ut-clause, ne is used and not ut non: as,

Monui te ne uxorem duceres. *I warned you not to marry*
So Ne quis is used for ut nemo (*that no one*), ne quid for ut nihil (*that nothing*), ne ullus for ut nullus (*that no*), and ne unquam for ut nunquam (*that never*): as,

Te rogo ne quid facias. *I ask you to do nothing.*

Obsecravit eum ne fidem unquam violaret. *He entreated him never to break his word.*

4. Or, and not, after a verb of asking, is neve: as,

Te rogavi ne eum accusares neve multares. *I asked you not to accuse and not to punish him.*

Neither . . . nor would be neve . . . neve.

5. Verbs meaning to effect, or strive are also followed by an ut-clause: as,

Sol efficit ut omnia floreat. *The sun makes everything flourish.*

Cura ut id facias. *Take care to do it.*

So too, verbs meaning to decide, when the subject of the ut-clause is different from that of the main verb: as,

Decernit ut consules delectum habeant. *It decrees that the consuls shall hold a levy.*

But, Omnia pati statuit. *He decided to suffer everything.*

6. Verbs meaning to *warn*, when stating a fact, become verbs of *saying* and require the Acc. with Inf.: as,

Nos monet hostes adesse. *He warns us that the enemy is at hand,*
So too, Hoc tibi persuadebo te errare. *I will persuade you of this,*
that you are wrong.

EXERCISE 19.

1. I will ask him to come. 2. Will they persuade him to return?
3. I beg you not to decree anything. 4. I urged (*hortor*) them to read their books. 5. I begged of them not to desert me. 6. He said that he had warned us to set out at once. 7. He decreed that no one should sell bread in the camp. 8. They were striving to defend the rights of the people. 9. He ordered them not to neglect (*desero*) the sacred rites (*sacra*) of the state. 10. I will ask him not to ask the gods for wealth. 11. Beg him not to come here to-day. 12. He said that he would strive with his utmost care to be dear to the citizens. 13. He ordered coined (*signatum*) gold and silver to be prepared. 14. Beg them not to fetter (*obstringo*) their minds by sloth. 15. They send ambassadors to announce that they are going to obey. 16. He says that he has chosen three men for drawing up (*scribo*) laws. 17. The army has gone there to plunder the temple (*use causa*). 18. He decided to repair all the ships. 19. What have we left? (*partitive Gen.*)

§ 20. SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

1. The Law of the Sequence of Tenses in subordinate clauses, referred to in §19, is of great importance and may be restated as follows:

A primary tense in the principal clause, is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; a secondary tense in the Prin. clause, is followed by a secondary tense in the Dep. clause. Thus:

PRIMARY.

Rogat	} te ut venias	He asks	} you to come.
Rogabit		He will ask	
Rogavit		He has asked	
Rogaverit		He will have asked	

SECONDARY.

Rogabat	} te ut venires	He was asking	} you to come.
Rogavit		He asked	
Rogaverat		He had asked	

So too, in Subord. clauses in Indir. Narration:

Dixit anulum, quem gereret, se sua manu fecisse. *He said that he had made with his own hand the ring, he was wearing.* (Impt. Subj. in Subord. clause of Indir. after Secondary tense).

The form in direct is: Anulum quem gero, mea manu feci. *I have made with my own hand the ring I am wearing.*

Dixit se, cum eorum consillia comperisset, reditum esse. *He said that, when he had ascertained their plans, he would return* (Perf. changed into Pluperf. in secondary sequence).

EXERCISE 20.

1. He will easily persuade you not to come. 2. They have asked him to stand for (*peto*) the consulship. 3. We asked him to help us. 4. I will ask him not to do anything against their will. 5. I was afraid that he would ruin the country. 6. He said that he would obey all the laws that were passed. 7. He used to say that the life, which had been given us, was short. 8. A man of honor will never be persuaded to betray his country. 9. They begged him to bring the maid. 10. Then at last (*demum*) he induced them to follow him. 11. They forbade him to do his duty. 12. I warn you not to oppose us. 13. He will take the city at the first onslaught. 14. After holding a levy, they will depart from the city. 15. A shower of rain accompanied by a strong wind (*Abl. of accompaniment*) stopped (*interimo*) the battle. 16. In this way he will show that he is braver than they. 17. This booty can be sold for much more.

§ 21. NOUN CLAUSES. INDIRECT QUESTION.

1. A question dependent upon a verb of *asking, knowing, telling*, or the like, has its verb in the Subjun.: as,

Scio unde venias. *I know where are you coming from.*

Here unde venias (*where you are coming from*) is called an indirect (or dependent) question.

2. *Whether (if)*, in an Indir. question, is Num: as,

Dic mihi num venerit. *Tell me whether (if) he has come.*

Whether . . . or is Utrum . . . an; but *or not* is necne in the indirect and not annon as in the direct question : as,

Quaeritur utrum interfectus sit necne. *The question is whether he has been put to death or not.*

3. The law of sequence of tenses is observed in the indirect question. Thus:—

PRIMARY.		SECONDARY.			
Rogo	} quid	agas.	Rogabam	} quid	ageres.
Rogabo		egeris.	Rogavi		egisses.
Rogavi		acturus sis.	Rogaveram		acturus esses
<i>I ask</i>	} what	<i>you are doing.</i>	<i>I was asking</i>	} what	<i>you were doing</i>
<i>I shall ask</i>		<i>you have done</i>	<i>I asked</i>		<i>you had done.</i>
		(or did).			
<i>I have asked</i>	} what	<i>you are going</i>	<i>I had asked</i>	} what	<i>you were going</i>
		<i>to do.</i>			<i>to do.</i>

Note.—A Perf. Subjun. in an Indir. Question becomes Pluperf. after a secondary tense (in accordance with the *Law of Sequence*): as, Rogo, num hunc librum legeris. *I ask whether you have read this book.*

Rogavi num hunc librum legisses. *I asked whether you had read this book.*

4. The Fut. Subjun. Act., which is wanting in Latin, is supplied by the Fut. Part. and the verb *to be*: as, Scio quid facturus sis, *I know what you will do.* (Dir. quest. = Quid ages? *What will you do?*)

Sciebam quid acturus esses. *I knew what you would do* (Imper. after a secondary tense).

5. The Fut. Subjun. Pass. and the Fut. Subjun. Act. of verbs that have no Supine, are formed by means of the impersonal futurum sit (or esset) with an *ut*-clause. Thus:

Rogo num futurum sit ut puer discat. *I ask whether the boy will learn.*

Rogavi num futurum esset ut puer disceret. *I asked whether the boy would learn.*

Non rogo quando futurum sit ut puer doceatur. *I do not ask when the boy will be taught.*

Non rogavi quando futurum esset ut puer doceretur. *I did not ask when the boy would be taught.*

6. After *nescio* or *haud scio* (*I don't know*), *dubito* (*I doubt*), *I almost think*, *Whether* is an: as,

Constantiamne dico? Nescio an melius patientiam possim dicere. *Consistency, do I say? I don't know whether I can not better say long-suffering.*

Dubito an eum primum omnium ponam. *I doubt whether I should not put him first of all.*

7. In sentences like *You know the skill with which he speaks*, Latin prefers the Indir. question and puts the noun in the dependent clause: as,

Scis quanta arte loquatur. *You know the skill with which he speaks.*

EXERCISE 21.

1. Don't you know whether you have conquered or not? 2. I should like to know whether these are your words or not. 3. Ask him what he thinks about the matter. 4. Tell me if your friend has returned. 5. We all know how daring you are. 6. You will never believe how often I have advised them. 7. Take care to inform me when you will set out. 8. Why don't you ask him where he has been? 9. I almost think that the man is happy. 10. I did not know whether he was a wise man or a fool. 11. I saw what you would do. 12. I asked them where they had laid my book. 13. Did you know by whom the city was founded? 14. Tell me how many they are? 15. I will ask the road by which he will return. 16. Do you think he knows what o'clock it is. 17. He said that it was of great importance whether you joined the popular party (*populares*) or the Optimates. 18. I did not know whether he had been killed (use *perco*) justly or unjustly. 19. Do not say that you intend to desert us.

§ 22. NOUN CLAUSES CONTINUED. QUOD-CLAUSES, UT-CLAUSES WITH IMPERSONALS, DEFINING UT-CLAUSES.

1. Quod with the Ind., meaning *the fact that*, often introduces a noun-clause in Latin: as,

Magnum est hoc, quod victor victis pepercit. *This is an important matter, the fact that, when victorious, he spared the vanquished.*

Quod, with the Ind., is often found in this sense with verbs of emotion like gaudeo, (*rejoice*), queror (*complain*), glorior (*boast*), gratum est (*it is pleasant*), mirum est (*it is wonderful*): as,

Veheementer laetor quod scripsisti. I am very glad that you have written.

Mihi gratum est quod venisti. Your coming is very welcome to me.

2. A noun-clause, introduced by *ut* with Subjun., or by the *quod* with Indic., is used after *Accedit*, in the sense of *it is added*: as,

Huc accessit ut caecus esset. To this was added the fact that he was blind.

Accedit quod patrem tuum amo. There is added the fact that I love your father.

3. An *ut*-clause is used after the following Impersonal verbs and phrases: *Accidit*, *evenit*, *contingit*, *fit*, *it happens*; *restat*, *reliquitur*, *est*, *it remains*; *feri potest*, *it is possible* (lit., *it may happen*); *nullo modo fieri potest*, *it is impossible*; *sequitur*, *it follows*; *tantum abest*, *it is so far from*; *expedit*, *it is expedient*; *convenit*, *it is agreed*: as,

Qui fit ut nemo contentus vivat? How does it happen that no one lives contentedly?

Accidit ut primus id nuntiaret. It happens that he is the first to announce it.

Tantum abest ut miremur omnes, ut nemo satisfiat. So far are we from admiring everyone, that no one satisfies.

Convenit ut in unis castris misceatur. It is agreed that they shall be united in one camp.

Convenit ut in unis castris misceretur. It was agreed that they should be united in one camp (secondary sequence).

4. A noun-clause, introduced by *ut* with the Subjun., is used to define a previous noun: as,

Commune vitium est ut invidia gloriae comes sit. It is a common vice that envy is the attendant of glory.

Cultus deorum est optimus ut eos pura mente veneremur. The best worship of the gods is that we should adore them with a pure heart.

EXERCISE 22.

1. He is very sorry that you came to help us. 2. It is a great thing that all will be spared. 3. He used to complain that men forgot their friends. 4. Why are you always boasting that you have done it? 5. It was their custom to sell their animals in the spring. 6. Is it not a wonderful thing their being unwilling to consult their own interests? 7. To this will be added the fact that the accused (*reus*) is a

rich man. 8. Setting out to attack the camp, he heard that it had been burnt by the enemy. 9. This is a new law that we should forgive our enemies. 10. Would that you had now as great a supply of good men as then! 11. I persuaded the father not to pay his son's debt (*aes alienum*). 12. He ordered them to bring the corn which they had promised. 13. Take care that I know what you are doing. 14. He said that the temptations (*illecebra*) of the city should be resisted. 15. Wonderful to say, they are glad that you have won (*consequor*) the office.

§ 23. QUOMINUS AND QUIN.

1. Verbs meaning to *hinder*, *prevent*, and the like, are followed in Latin by the Subjun. with *quominus* (= *by which the less, or not*): as
Senectus non impedit quominus literis fruamur. *Old age does not prevent us from enjoying literature.*

Per me stetit quominus ad te scriberet. *It was owing to me that he did not write to you* (secondary sequence; lit., *by which he did not*).

Note.—Of verbs of *preventing*, Prohibeo is usually followed by the Inf.: as, Prohibent eum exire. *They prevent him from going out.*

2. Instead of *quominus*, after verbs of *hindering*, *ne* may be used and, after a negative, *quin*: as,

Plura ne scribam, dolore impediō. *I am prevented by grief from writing more.*

Nunquam me detertere potes, quin loquar. *You can never deter me from speaking* (*quin* = *qui ne, how not*).

3. A common use of *quin* is after *Non dubito* (*I do not doubt*) or *Non est dubium* (*there is no doubt*): as, *Non dubito quin hoc feceris. I do not doubt that you did it.*

Non erat dubium quin fecisses. There was no doubt that you had done it (Secondary sequence).

Non est dubium quin id facturus sis. There is no doubt that you will do it.

4. *Quin* is used after the following negative phrases:—

Nemo est (quin). There is no one but.

Quid causae est? What reason is there against?

Fieri non potest. It can not be but that.

Temperare mihi non possum. I can not refrain from.

Minimum (haud multum) abesse. *Be very near.*

Facere non possum. *I can not help.*

Thus: Facere non potuit quin bellum inferret. *He could not help making war.*

Nihil praetermisit quin nobis persuaderet. *He left nothing undone to persuade us.*

Minimum abfuit quin omnes interficerentur. *All were within a little of being killed.*

Quid causae est quin id velit? *What reason is there against his wishing it? (lit., what of cause is there).*

Fieri non potest quin exclamem. *It is impossible for me not to cry out.*

Fieri non potest quin turpe sit fidem fallere. *It cannot be denied honorable to break one's word.*

Ignorat quin haec vera sint? *Is any one ignorant that these are the truth.*

Note—Quis means *any* after *si* (*if*), *nisi* (*unless*), *ne*, *num.* *quo* and *quanto*.

EXERCISE 23.

1. Nothing prevented us from building a city. 2. Nothing shall deter me from speaking the truth. 3. No one can doubt that he has returned. 4. He could hardly be prevented from laughing. 5. No one doubted that he had killed his friend. 6. They never saw him but (*quin*) they called him thief. 7. The storm will prevent them from coming. 8. We can not object (*recuso*) too thers dissenting (*use quin*). 9. No one is so wise that he can not learn. 10. He has left nothing undone to finish this business. 11. It was owing to you that the wedding did not take place. 12. Nothing ever deterred him from praising what deserved praise. 13. I was afraid that they could not be prevented from making war. 14. I do not hesitate to say that he has gone away to see the king. 15. He could not help sending a letter every day. 16. Tell me why you are so much distrustful. 17. Ask him whether the money ought to be restored (*reddo*). 18. He had a new temple built (*use curo*). 19. The more he promised, the more angry I became. 20. He thought that it was owing to us that they had not fought (*Impers. Pass.*)

§ 24. VERBS OF FEARING: MODAL VERBS.

1. Verbs meaning *to fear* are followed by *Ne* for *that* and *Ut* (or *ne non*) for *that not*: as,

Vereor ne veniat. *I am afraid that he will come.*

Vereor ut veniat. *I am afraid that he will not come.*

The Fut. after verbs of *fearing* is expressed by the Subj. un., the Pres. Subjun. after a Primary tense, the Imperf. after a Secondary: as,

Timeo ne non labores sustineas, *I am afraid that you will not endure your labors*; timebam ne ea evenirent, *I was afraid that those things would happen.*

2. Phrases like *Periculum est*, *there is danger*, take the construction of verbs of *fearing*: as,

Periculum erat ne te verbis obrueret. *There was danger that he would overwhelm you with words.*

3. Many verbs (called *modal verbs*) take an Inf. after them to complete their meaning: as, *Audeo* (*dare*), *cogo* (*compel*), *conor*, (*endeavor*), *constituo* and *statuo* (*determine*), *cunctor* and *dubito* (*hesitate*), *cupio* (*desire*), *debeo* (*ought*), *desino* (*cease*), *disco* (*learn*), *incipio* (*begin*), *malo* (*prefer*), *nescio* (*not know how*), *nolo* (*be unwilling*), *obliscor* (*forget*), *patior* (*allow*), *paro* (*prepare*), *possum* (*be able*), *scio* (*know how*), *soleo* (*be accustomed*), *vereor* (*fear*), *volo* (*be willing*): as,

Malo mori, *I prefer to die*; desine mirari, *cease to wonder*.

Note 1.—Of these verbs *volo* and *nolo* often take the Subjun. with or without *Ut*: as, *Hoc (ut) facias velim*, *I should like you to do this*.

Note 2.—*Vereor* (*fear*) has the Inf. in Latin when *fear* has the Inf. in English: as, *Veretur redire*. *He fears to return*.

4. A noun or Adj. with the modal Inf. (and referring to the Subj. of the main vb.) is in the Nom. and not in the Acc.: as,

Vult esse servus. *He wishes to be a slave.*

EXERCISE 24.

1. I do not think that you are afraid to die. 2. There was great danger that he would attack the camp. 3. They thought that he was afraid that he should be captured by the Ligians. 4. I can tell you that all your plans are now clearer than the light. 5. He said that he was afraid that their prestige (*auctoritas*) in the provinces

would be lost. 6. Relying upon our friendship, he does not hesitate to put the provincials (*socius*) to death. 7. He sent an envoy at sunset to demand (*postulo*) that we should withdraw all our garrisons from the towns. 8. He said that he would warn us never to enter the city. 9. Have you come to Gaul to sue for the consulship? 10. I believe that the city will be given up to the soldiers to be plundered. 11. Do not let such an opportunity be lost of deserving well of your fellow-citizens. 12. Do you think that he has any (*ullus*) hope of getting possession of the camp? 13. He never seemed likely to sue (*Fut. Part.*) for the consulship. 14. They seemed to be free.

§ 25. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES. TEMPORAL CLAUSES. POSTQUAM, DUM, PRIUSQUAM.

1. Adverbial clauses are of *eight* kinds:

(a) *Local*, introduced by *ubi* (*where*), *unde* (*whence*), and *quo* (*whither*).

(b) *Temporal*, introduced by *cum* (*when*), *dum* (*while*), *postquam* (*after that*), *priusquam* (*before that*), etc.

(c) *Final* (those that denote an end or purpose.)

(d) *Consecutive* (those that denote a result.)

(e) *Causal* (those that denote a cause), introduced by *quod* or *quia* (*because*), *cum* or *quoniam* (*since*).

(f) *Concessive* (those that denote a concession), introduced by *etsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *etiamsi* (*although*).

(g) *Comparative* (those that denote comparison or proportion), introduced by *ut* (*as*), *quasi*, *velut* (*as if*) &c.

(h) *Conditional*, introduced by *si* (*if*), *nisi* (*unless*), *dum* (*provided that*).

2. Local adverbial clauses add to the statement of the main clause the idea of *place*: as,

Nolo vivere ubi tyrannus est. I do not wish to live where there is a tyrant.

Quo vult et qua vult, vagatur. He strolls where he will and in what direction he will.

Note.—*Ubi* expresses *rest*; *quo*, *motion towards*; and *qua*, *direction*.

The verb of the local adverbial clause is in the Ind. except (a) in Indir. narration; (b) when it has a final force (i.e., is used to express a purpose): as,

Di it se, quo vellet. vagari. He said that he strolled where he wished. Direct = quo volo, vago. I stroll where I wish).

Massiliam abiit ubi exulet. He has gone off to Massilia to live in exile there. (Here the adverbial clause expresses both place and purpose; i.e., ubi = ut ibi, that there).

3. Temporal Adv. clauses introduced by *postquam*, *simul*, *simul ac* (or, before a vowel, *atque*), *ubi*, *ut* (*primum*), *cum* (*primum*) (*after that*) are followed by the Indic.: as,

Simul atque haec audivit, abiit. After he had heard this, he went away (no sooner had he heard this).

Note.—The perfect is used after these conjunctions for the English Pluper.

4. Temporal conjunctions meaning *while* or *until*, like *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, take the Indic. when they mean *while*, *as long as*: as,

Dum ea Romani parant, iam oppidum oppugnabatur. While the Romans were making these preparations, the town was already being besieged.

Note.—When the time expressed by the *dum*-clause includes the time of the action of the main verb, the Pres. tense is used in Latin not the past.

5. *Dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, meaning *until*, take the Ind. when used to express *time alone*: as,

Dum rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. There was silence until Marcellus returned.

Note.—*Dum* (*until*) is followed by the Fut. Pf. for the English Pres., when the action expressed by the verb of the temporal clause is to be over before that of the main verb begins: as,●

Non veniet dum scripsero. He will not come till I write.

But when *Dum* expresses some further idea of *purpose* or *expectation* it requires the Pres. Subjun. after Primary tenses and the Imperf. after Secondary: as;

Differant dum ira defervescat. Let them put off till their anger cools (i.e., in order that their anger may cool: purpose):

Dum naves convenirent, expectavit. He waited till the ships should assemble (i.e., in order that they might assemble; purpose).

Impetum hostium sustinuit dum ceteri pontem interrumperent. He withstood the attack of the enemy till the rest should break down the bridge.

6. Dum for dummodo, *provided that*, is joined with the Subjun.: as, Oderint dum metuant. *Let them hate, provided that they fear.*

7. Priusquam and antequam, take the Ind. when they mark simple priority in time: as, Priusquam lucet, adsunt. *They are here before it is light.*

Antequam aliquo loco consedero, ne longas a me litteras expectaveris. *Before I settle (literally, shall have settled) somewhere, do not expect a long letter from me.*

They take the Subjun. however to express the further idea of purpose or of an act anticipated or prevented: as,

Priusquam se hostes ex terrorc recipent, in castra eorum ercitus duxit. *Before the enemy recovered from their panic, he led his army into their territory (final; = in order that they might not recover).*

Priusquam pugnaretur, nox intervenit. *Night came on before the battle was fought (result prevented).*

Note 1.—They are often written in two words, as, Ante roat quam pluit, *it drops before it rains*. Written thus, they are often used for the English *not . . . until*: as, Non prius respondebo quam tacueris, *I shall not answer until you are silent.*

Note 2.—Priusquam with the Subjun. became almost a fixed formula and was used to express simple priority in time: as,

Priusquam educeret in aciem, orationem est exorsus. *Before leading forth to action, he began an harangue.*

8. In Indir. Narr., the verb of a temporal Adver. clause is in the Subjun.: as,

Dixit eos, ut primum luceret, adesse. *He said that they were there, as soon as it was light.*

EXERCISE 25.

1. He falls into Scylla while he tries to avoid Charybdis. 2. While there is life there is hope. 3. He used to say that while there was life there was hope. 4. He was detained there until the consul was consulted. 5. Wait until you are obeyed. 6. After he had observed that, he went away. 7. He did not take part in the battle until his father was killed. 8. Let him wait until we arrive. 9. Our forces entered the city before the gates were closed. 10. Provided that there is a wall between you and me, I shall not be sorry.

have
 11. While this was going on (*gero*), word was brought that all our ships had been sunk (*demergo*). 12. They did not cease to fly until they reached the river. 13. Before he knew the joy of life, death took him away. 14. He decided to consult the Senate before he set out. 15. They did not know whether to praise or blame (*culpo*). 16. He was brought into such danger by commanding armies, that he wished to withdraw.

§ 26. THE SYNTAX OF CUM.

1. Cum, *when*, simply expressing a point of time (called *cum temporal*) takes the Indic.: as,

Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui. *When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders of the one party.*

Cum rure rediero, tu Romae eris. *When I return from the country, you will be in Rome.*

In these sentences, cum is a Rel. Adv. and corresponds to a suppressed correlative tum (*then*) in the main clause.

2. Cum meaning *since* (called *cum causal*), requires the Subjun.: as,

Quae cum ita sint, Catilina, perge. *As this is so, Catiline, go on.*

3. When used with the Imper. or Pluper., cum usually takes the Subjun.: as,

Cum leges mutare vellet, prohibitus est. *When he wished to change the laws, he was prevented.*

Decessit Agesilaus cum in portum venisset. *Agesilaus died when he had entered the harbor.*

Note.—When used with the Impf. or Plpf. Ind., it refers to some definite point of time (eo anno, eo die.)

4. Cum with the Subjun., sometimes has a concessive force meaning *although*: as,

Pylades cum sis, dices te esse Orestem. *Though you are Pylades, you will say you are Orestes.*

Note.—Hence it may express the English *instead of* with a verbal noun: as,

Cum dicere deberet, tacuit. *Instead of speaking, he held his peace* (lit., *when he ought to have spoken*).

Cum hostes persequi deberet, ad urbem rediit. *Instead of (or without) following up the enemy, he returned to the city.*

5. Cum with the Imper. or Pluper. Subjun., is a common substitute for the Perf. Part. Act., which is wanting in Latin: as,

Cum haec dixisset, abiit. *Having spoken these words, he departed.*

There are, therefore, four substitutes for the Perf. Part. Act.:—

- (a) Cum + Imperf. or Pluperf. Subj. (b) Postquam + Perf. Indic.
(c) The Abl. Abs. (d) The Perf. Part. of a synonymous deponent.

Thus: *Having spoken these words, is:—*

- (a) Cum haec dixisset. (b) Postquam haec dixit. (c) His dictis
(= *these things said*). (d) Haec locutus.

6. Cum with the Indic. (called *cum frequentative*) is often used for quoties, as often as, whenever.

In this sense, the Perf. is used for the Eng. Pres. and the Pluper. for the English past: as,

Cum rosam vidi, tum ver esse arbitror. *Whenever I see the rose, then I judge that it is spring.*

Cum impetum fecerant, hostes cedere cogebantur. *Whenever they made a charge, the enemy were forced to retire.*

After cum, however, in this sense, the Subjun. is used by Livy and Tacitus.

7. Cum is never used interrogatively: *When do you intend to speak?* is Quando (not Cum) dicturus es?

EXERCISE 26.

1. When he had seen that their condition (*res*) was prosperous, he set out from the city. 2. This being the case, let them take their things and go. 3. Who can tell me when he intends to return? 4. Having conquered the greater part of the island, he died there. 5. Whenever he came to a town, he demanded hostages. 6. When they had arrived at the top of the hill, they saw a broad plain below. 7. When you had finished your work, you should have helped your friend. 8. Seeing this, he marched against them at once. 9. Instead of going to Athens, you remained at Rome. 10. He obeyed at a time when all had to obey. 11. Whenever he saw any one (say *some one*) badly clothed, he gave him his cloak (*pallium*). 12. When I hear him speak, I shall know whether he is an orator or not.

13. The battle was not ended until the general was killed. 14. The more they have, the more they ask for. 15. All agree (*inter omnes constat*) that he preferred Demosthenes to (say *than*) Cicero. 16. You will have to pay, when the day of payment (*gerund*) comes.

§ 27. FINAL AND CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1. Instead of the *Inf. of purpose*, so common in English, Latin uses most frequently to express purpose *Ut* with the Subjun.: as,
Veni ut pacem petam. I come to seek peace.

Veni ut pacem peterem. I came to seek peace (Secondary sequence).

Such clauses are called *Final Clauses*.

Note.—The Pres. Perf. is frequently followed by secondary sequence: as,

Patronus exstiti ne iste desertus videretur. I have appeared as his lawyer that he might not seem deserted.

2. When a Comparative is used in the final clause, *quo* is used for *that* instead of *ut*: as,

Hoc facio quo sis tutior. I do this, that you may be safer.

3. When a *not* is required in the final clause, *ut* becomes *ne*: as,
Hoc dico ne te laedam. I say this not to offend you (i.e. to avoid offending you).

4. The use of *ut* with other negative words (*nemo, nihil, nullus, nunquam*) is also avoided: as,

Portam claude ne quis excedat. Shut the gate that no one may go out (ne quis = ut nemo).

Abii ne quid viderem. I went away that I might see nothing (ne quid = ut-nihil).

Clamant ne ullum verbum audiatur. They are shouting that no word may be heard (ne ullum = ut nullum).

Hoc facite ne unquam vituperent. Do this that they may never revile (ne unquam = ut nunquam).

5. For *et ne* (following *ut* or a previous *ne*), *neve* (or *neu*) is used: as,

Hoc dico ut bono animo sit neve perturbetur. I say this that he may be of good courage and may not be disturbed. Abibo ne eum videam neve audiam, I will go away that I may not see or hear him.

6. The Rel. *qui* (called *qui final*) is often used with the Subjun. to express a *purpose*: as

Misit legatos qui pacem peterent. *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace* (*qui* = *ut ei, that they*).

Note.—Rel. adverbs, like *ubi* (*where*) and *unde* (*whence*), are used with the Subjun. like the Rel. Pron., to express a *purpose*: as,

Domum ubi habitaret legit. *He chose a house where he might dwell* (*ubi* = *ut ibi, that there*);

Cupit habere unde solvat. *He wants to have means to pay* (*unde* = *ut inde, that thence*).

7. Instead of the Eng. *Inf. of Purpose*, the following forms may, therefore, be used for: *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace.*

Legatos misit	{	ut pacem peterent (<i>ut final</i>).
		qui pacem peterent (<i>qui final</i>).
		ad pacem petendam (gerundive Acc. with ad).
		pacis petendae causa (gerundive Gen. with causa).
		ad pacem petendum (gerund Acc. with ad).
		pacem petendi causa (gerund Gen. with causa).
		pacem petitum (supine after verb of motion).
		pacem petituros (Fut. Part. Act. : rare).

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

8. Clauses in Latin that express a *result* (consecutive clauses) are also expressed in Latin by *Ut* (*so that*) and the Subjun.: as,

Ita vivit ut nihil habeat. *He lives in such a way that he has nothing.*

9. *Ut consecutive* is used after the following demonstrative words: *Talis, such*; *tantus, so great, such*; *tot, so many*; *toties, so often*; *sic, ita, tam, so*; *adeo, to such a degree*.

10. The rule for the sequence of tenses (after a past tense) does not apply to Consec. clauses. The Perf. Subjun. is used of a single act, the Imperf. of a repeated or continuous one: as,

Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut rex ipse fugerit. *Such fear seized all, that the king himself fled* (of a single act).

Tanta tempestas coorta est ut nulla navis cursum tenere posset. *So great a storm arose that no ship could hold its course* (of a continuous act).

11. If a negative is required in the Consec. clause, *ut non* is used and not—as in a final clause—*ne*: as,

Tam caecus fuit ut me non viderit. *He was so blind that he did not see me (or as not to see me).* So too, in a Consec. clause: *That no one is ut nemo, that nothing is ut nihil, that no (Adj.) is ut nullus, and that never is ut nunquam: as,*

Talis erat ut nemo ei crederet. *He was of such a character that no one used to believe him.,*

Tam improbus fuit ut nihil eum unquam a scelere revocaverit. *He was so wicked that nothing ever recalled him from crime.*

Ita insulam vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo potuerit. *He so harried the island that it could in no way be restored to its ancient condition.*

EXERCISE 27.

1. Let us go to Rome to see the games. 2. Why do they not surround the city with a wall, that it may be more secure? 3. We are preparing arms, not to attack you but to defend the country. 4. It is so covered with trees that it seems a forest. 5. Take away his sword that he may hurt no one. 6. It may happen that you are sometimes (*aliquando*) wrong. 7. They took Cincinnatus from the plough to make him consul. 8. The river was so deep that no one could cross. 9. It was so hard that no one could do it. 10. Do this, that no one may blame you. 11. He went away that he might not see us. 12. Having heard of the disaster, he sent out scouts (*exploratores*) to ascertain (*cognosco*) the truth. 13. He used to say that, while learning to command, we ought also to obey. 14. Remember how well this man has deserved of his country. 15. Wait till the class is dismissed. 16. You ought to have waited till I returned.

§ 28. CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

1. Causal Adver. clauses state the *cause* or reason for the fact mentioned in the main clause. They are usually introduced by *quod*, *quia* (*because*) or *quoniam* (= *quum iam*, *since now*, *seeing that*) which are followed by the Indic., when the reason they introduce is given on the speaker's own authority; by the Subjun., when it is given on the authority of another: *as*,

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumpere iuventutem. *Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he was corrupting the young* (corrumperebat would mean that the speaker vouched for the truth of the charge).

N.B.—This use of the Subjun. called *virtual oblique* and is very common.

2. Cum, in the sense of *since*, is often used to introduce a causal clause: as,

Haec cum ita sint, abibo. *As this is so, I shall go away.*

3. The Rel. Qui (called *qui causal*) is often used with the Subjun. to introduce a causal clause: as,

Pecasse videor qui a te discesserim. *It seems I have done wrong, inasmuch as I have parted from you* (peccasse = peccavisse).

Note.—In this sense, qui is often strengthened by the addition of quippe or utpote, *indeed, as being*: as, Multa de me questus est quippe qui in me incensus esset. *He complained at length of me, inasmuch as he had been exasperated against me.*

4. Qui *causal* is often found with the Acc. of exclamation: as,

Me miserum, qui haec fecerim. *Wretched that I am for doing this!*

5. Non quod or non quo, with the Subjun., is used to introduce a rejected reason: as,

Hoc laudo non quod honestum sit, sed quod utile est. *I praise this, not because it is honorable but because it is expedient.*

So too, Non quin, *not but that*: as,

Non quin me ames sed quod abire cupio. *Not but that you love me, but because I am anxious to go.*

6. Of the Concessive conjunctions, Quamquam takes the Ind., quamvis or licet the Subjun., and etsi the construction of Si (Section 30): as,

Romani, quamquam proelio fessi erant, tamen procedunt. *The Romans, although they were weary with fighting, nevertheless advance.*

Vita brevis est quamvis (licet) supra mille annos exeat. *Life is short though it extends beyond a thousand years.*

Etsi falso in suspicionem venisses, tamen mihi ignoscere debuisti. *Even though you had been falsely suspected, still you should have pardoned me* (in suspicionem venire = the Pass. of suspicor, *I suspect*).

Note.—In Tacitus, Quamvis often has the Ind. and quamquam the Subjun.

7. Quamvis may be used with single words as an adverb with no influence on the verb of the clause: as,

Ille, quamvis facetus, odio est. *He however witty, is hated* (or *whatever his wit*. [Odio esse, to be for an object of hate, is the Pass. of odi, *I hate*].

8. The Rel. Qui with the Subjun., is often used concessively. It is called Qui *concessive*: as,

Caesar, qui haec videret, tamen aciem instruxit. *Though Caesar saw this, still he drew up his line* (qui = quamvis).

9. Latin Concessive conjunctions are used to express English phrases like *In spite of, notwithstanding, whatever*: as,

In spite of his being a good man, he was condemned. Is quamquam vir bonus erat, condemnatus est.

However guilty he may be (whatever his guilt), he will be acquitted. Is, quamvis nocentissimus sit, absolvetur.

10. Quamquam is often used co-ordinately, in the sense of *and yet*: as,

Quamquam de illis satis provisum erat. *And yet, with regard to them, sufficient provision had been made.*

EXERCISE 28.

1. They are silent because they fear danger. 2. Aristides was banished because he was just (*vir . obl.*). 3. Oh wretched man, who seest not that, death is to be contemned! 4. He praises him because he was self-restrained (*temperans*). 5. He was sorry because he held the same political opinions as I (*idem sentire de re p.*). 6. Since that is the case, I commend (*laudo*) the Bill (*rogatio*). 7. He was thrown into prison because he had killed his friend. 8. Although he was unwilling, he ordered the men to advance. 9. Though he is worthy of punishment, I pity him. 10. Do not hinder them from coming here. 11. He was angry with me because I preferred gain to friendship. 12. He kept asking them for the corn they had promised (*virt. obl.*). 13. It makes no matter to us how you got the money. 14. They reached Rome before we knew that they had set out. 15. Although many dangers impend over me, I am determined to face (*subire*) them. 16. And yet he has always contemned pleasure. 17. Shall we ever know what his opinion is? 18. I am surprised that (*quod*) you write nothing for me.

§ 29. QUI WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

1. It has been seen that Qui is used with the Subjun. to express:

(a) A *purpose*: Legatos misit qui pacem peterent. *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace.*

(b) A reason: *Me miserum, qui hoc fecerim. Wretched that I am for having done this.*

(c) A concession: *Caesar, qui haec videret, tamen copias eduxit. Caesar, though he saw this, led out his forces.*

It is much more widely used to express a *Characteristic*: as,

Non is sum qui hoc faciam. I am not the one to do it (qui = ut ego, that I). Here *Is* qui has the force of *such as to, of such a kind as to*.

2. A Rel. Clause of Characteristic is used after the following:

(a) Certain *indefinite expressions*: *Sunt qui (there are some who), habeo qui (I have who), reperiuntur qui (there are found who), nemo est qui (there is no one who), quis est qui? ((who is there who?), nihil est quod (there is nothing that), est cur (there is reason why), quotusquisque est qui (how few there are who): as,*

Sunt qui discessum animi putent esse mortem. There are some who think the departure of the soul is death.

Nihil est quod dicere velim. There is nothing that I wish to say.

Nihil est cur irascere. There is no reason why you should be angry.

Nihil habet quo se defendat. He has nothing to defend himself with.

(b) After *dignus (worthy), indignus (unworthy), and idoneus or aptus (fit): as,*

Dignus est qui ametur. He is worthy to be loved (= he is worthy that he should be loved = he deserves to be).

(c) After *Quam* with a *Compar.*: as,

Maiores quam cui resisti possit. It is too great to be resisted (= greater than to whom it can be resisted).

Note.—*Possum, I can*, is used impersonally, only when joined with a *Pass. Inf.*

(d) In *Neg.* and *Interrog.* sentences, after *Tam, sic, adeo (so), or tantus (so great): as, Nemo tam (or quis tam) ferreus est qui haec faciat. No one is (or who is) so iron-hearted as to do this.*

3. Instead of *Qui non, quin (who not)* with the *Subjun.*, is often used: as,

Nemo est quin sciat. There is no one who does not know.

4. *Qui* with the *Subjun.* is also used in a *restrictive sense*: as,
Nemo, qui quidem paulo prudentior sit, hoc dubitat. No one who at least is a man of some sense, doubts this (= if, at least, he is.)

So, too: *Nemo, quod sciam. No one, as far as I know.*

EXERCISE 29.

1. There are cert. in men whom we do not care to see often. 2. Who is there who does not hate the coward? 3. Is there anyone so hard as not to be moved by these tears? 4. No one doubts that the soul is immortal. 5. Nothing is so obscure that it cannot be found out by inquiry (*quaero*). 6. Is anyone so foolish that he can understand nothing? 7. He is not the man to forget his friends. 8. I will send you a man to tell you the truth. 9. Is he a fit person to be trusted? 10. He was unworthy to obtain such an office. 11. You have committed a crime too great to be forgiven. 12. How few there are who like him! 13. Why did you not ask him what he was doing? 14. This book is too difficult to understand. 15. I did not doubt that he had spoken the truth. 16. Although the king was dying, he ordered them to surrender the city. 17. He used to say that gold was better than silver, and knowledge better than gold. 18. He replied that, as soon as (*cum primum*) it was reported that an enemy was near, all who were in the country fled for refuge (*confugio*) into the town. 19. O happy Achilles who found Homer for a herald (*praeco*)!

§ 30. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

1. A conditional sentence contains (a) a main clause, (b) an adverbial clause stating the condition on which the statement of the main clause is, or would be, true. The clause containing the condition is called the *if*-clause.

2. The common types of the conditional sentence are as follows:—

IND. IN BOTH CLAUSES.

IF-CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE.
1. Si quis haec dicit, If anyone says this, Si quis haec dixit, If anyone said this,	errat. he is wrong. erravit. he was wrong.
2. Si quis haec dicet (or dixerit), If anyone says (lit., shall say or have said) this,	errabit. he will be wrong.

SUBJUN. IN BOTH CLAUSES.

3. Si quis haec dicat, erret.
If anyone were to (or should) say this, he would be wrong.

4. Si quis haec diceret, erraret.
If anyone were saying this (now), he would be wrong.

5. Si quis haec dixisset, erravisset.
If anyone had said this (in the past), he would have been wrong.

Note.—Instead of the Eng. Pres. referring to the future (as in type 2), Latin uses the Fut., or—if the action of the verb in the if-clause is over before that of the main verb begins—the Fut. Perf.

3. *Unless (or if not with the force of unless) is nisi or ni: as,*
Nisi arma sumpsisisses, deletus esses. Unless you had taken up arms, you would have been destroyed.

Nisi medicus adesset, puer moreretur. If the doctor were not here, the boy would be dying. But when if not cannot be turned into unless, it is expressed by si non: as,

Cur mihi nocet, si ego tibi non noceo? Why do you harm me, if I do not harm you?

4. *Any, after si or nisi, is quis: as,*
Si quis ita fecerit, poenas dabit. If anyone does so, he will be punished (lit., shall have done so).

5. *Whether . . . or, introducing alternative conditions, is expressed by sive (seu) . . . sive (seu): as,*

Sive adfuisti sive abfuisti, nihil dico. Whether you were present or absent, I say nothing.

Note—Sive . . . sive must be distinguished from utrum . . . an, introducing a dependent double question and used as the Subj. or Obj. of a verb: as,

Utrum velit an nolit, rogo. I ask whether he is willing or unwilling.

6. *But if, introducing a corrected condition, is sin (= si + ne, if not); if not (without a verb) is si minus (or, rarely, si non): as,*

Si rogas, respondeo; sin nihil rogas, taceo. If you ask, I answer; but if you don't ask, I hold my peace.

Si haec fecerit, gaudebo; si minus, aequo animo feram. If he does it, I shall be glad; if not, I shall bear it with patience.

7. *Nisi forte* (or *vero*) is often used to express an ironical objection: as,

Nisi forte existimatis eum dementem fuisse. Unless indeed you think that he was mad (= you surely do not think).

8. The verb of the if-clause in Indir. Narr. is in the Subjun.: as,
Dicit se, si quid habeat, daturum esse. He says that, if he has anything, he will give it.

Dixit se, si quid haberet, daturum esse. He said that, if he had anything, he would give it (secondary sequence).

EXERCISE 30.

1. If I had set out that night, I should have seen him. 2. If he is in command of the army (*praesum*), the country will be safe. 3. If you should ask me that, I should answer nothing. 4. If I am present, I shall speak. 5. If I knew the name of that flower, I should value it more highly. 6. If dogs barked in the daylight (*luce*), they would be killed. 7. Whether he reads or writes, he wastes no time. 8. Will you ask them how much I ought to give? 9. Whether you were absent or whether you were present, you will be punished. 10. Economy (*parsimonia*) is the art of using money with moderation (*moderate*). 11. Even a short life is long enough for (*ad*) living well. 12. Time would fail me to tell all. 13. By burning his ships, he taught the army that there was no hope of returning home unless victorious. 14. Wait till you know which of the two ought to be assisted. 15. When he learns the danger, he will advise you not to leave (*excedo*) the camp.

§ 31. CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Conditional Sentences may be divided into three classes:

I. Simple present and past conditions.

II. Future conditions.

III. Conditions contrary to fact.

The *first class* includes conditional sentences in which nothing is said as to the fulfilment of the condition. These are easily recognised when the other two classes can be distinguished. They have the Ind. in both clauses: as,

Pecuniam si habet, dat. If he has money, he gives it.

Pecuniam si habuit, dedit. If he had money, he gave it.

Note.—*Si* rarely stands at the head of the sentence. Hence the common use of *Quodsi* (*but if*) for *si*, at the head of a *si*-clause.

2. The *second class* includes those in which the fulfilment of the condition is referred to the future. Of these there are two types:—

(a) Where the condition is regarded as likely to be fulfilled: as,
Pecuniam si habebit, dabit. If he has (Old Eng., shall have) money, he will give it.

Here the Fut. Ind. is used in both clauses. But the Fut.-Perf. is used in the *if*-clause, when the action of the Vb. of that clause is to be represented as over before that of the main Vb. begins: as,

Hoc si fecerit, morietur. If he does this (lit., shall have done), he will die.

(b) Where the condition is regarded as unlikely to be fulfilled. Such sentences have in English *would* or *should* in the main clause: as,
Pecuniam si habeat, det. If he should have money, he would give it.
 Here the Pres. S. Subjun. is used in both clauses.

3. The *third class* includes those in which the condition is represented as not fulfilled. Of these also there are two types:

(a) Where the condition is referred to the present. These have in English the word *now* (expressed or understood) in both clauses: as,

Pecuniam si haberet, daret. If he had money (now), he would give it (now).

Here the Imperf. Subjun. is used in both clauses.

(b) Where the condition is referred to the past. This type has in English *would have* in the main clause: as,

Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset. If he had had, he would have given it.

Here the Pluper. Subjun. is used in both clauses.

Note 1.—In sentences of Class II., the *if*-clause may refer to the past, while the main clause refers to the present, or *vice versa*: as, *Illi si haec fecissent, viverent. If they had done this, they would now be alive.*

Note 2.—The first type of Class III. is also used of *past time* to express *continuous action*: as, *Haec si sentirent, sapientes essent. If they had held these views, they would have been wise.*

4. *Provided that* is expressed by *dum*, by *modo*, or by *dummodo*, all with the Subjun. (with *ne* for *non* in Neg. clauses): as,

Veniant *dum ne* maneant. *Let them come, provided that they do not remain*

5. *Si*, *nisi*, *si non* (or *minus*) may be used with single words: as,
 Historia nihil nisi annalium confectio fuit. *History was nothing but the compiling of annals.*

Cum spe, si non optima, at aliqua tamen vivere. *To live with some hope, if not the highest.*

Note.—At *tamen* is always used with single words, never used to introduce a sentence.

EXERCISE 31.

1. If you wish, you can do anything. 2. If my slaves feared me in this way, I should think that I ought to leave my house. 3. Leap from the ship, gentlemen, unless you wish to betray the eagle to the enemy. 4. If they should say this, they would be telling a falsehood. 5. If I had thought this the best thing to be done, I would not have given him an hour to live. 6. If you follow them to the river, they will all be captured. 7. As long as he lived, he opposed me. 8. They would (use *volo*) not help you, if they could, and they could not, if they would. 9. If he were alive, we should hear his voice. 10. If you had not come to the army, you would have been seen by the magistrate. 11. Provided that there is a wall between you and me, I shall be free from fear. 12. They fought in such a narrow sea, that their ships could not be deployed (*explico*). 13. Provided that he is not killed, I shall be content. 14. I believe that no one ever assisted his friend as much as he. 15. You ought to have returned home, as soon as you heard of your brother's death. 16. Will you ask him which of the two was the first to propose (*fero*) the law.

§ 32. MAY, CAN, MUST, OUGHT. PERSONAL AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Except in *wishes*, *commands* etc. (§13), *may* is not expressed in Simple Sentences by the Subjun. Thus:

Fieri potest ut fallar. *I may be deceived.*

Licet vobis ire. *You may go (permission).*

2. An Adj. joined to an Inf. with *licet* is in the Dat., if the noun or pronoun is expressed, if not, in the Inf.: as,

Licet vobis esse ignavis. You may be cowards.

Licet esse ignavos. We may be cowards (lit., *it is allowed to be cowards*).

3. *Ought* or *should*, expressing *moral obligation*, is *debeo* or *oportet* with the Inf.: as,

Pecuniam solvere debes. You ought to pay the money.

The Eng. Perf. Inf. used after *might*, *could*, *ought*, is expressed in Latin by the Pres. Inf.: as,

Hoc mihi facere licuit. I might have done it.

Hoc facere potui. I could have done it.

Note 1—Duty, obligation, etc. are usually expressed by the *Passive Periphr. Conjug.* (§15).

Note 2—Both *licet* and *oportet* may take the Subjun. (with or without *ut*): as,

Eum, ut libet, ludas licet. You may fool him as you please (*ut* omitted).

Ex rerum cognitione redundet oportet eloquentia. Eloquence must flow from knowledge of the subject (*ut* omitted).

4. *Must*, expressing strong probability, is *haud fieri potuit* quin, *it could not have been but that*: as, *Haud (or non) fieri potuit quin eam videret. He must have seen her.*

PERSONAL AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

5. The pronouns of the 1st and 2nd persons are rarely expressed, except for emphasis or contrast: as,

Ego laudo sed tu vituperas. I praise, but you blame (pronouns expressed because in antithesis.)

Ego illud dicam. For my part I will say this (pronoun emphatic).

The personal pronouns of the 3rd person are wanting, but are supplied by the demonstratives *is*, *hic*, or *ille*, *this*, *that*:

Note.—*Is* expresses the article *a* or *the*, used emphatically before a relative: as, *Redde eum librum quem abstulisti. Restore the book which you took away.*

6. The three Demonstrative pronouns, *Hic*, *iste*, *ille*, refer respectively to the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons: as, *Hic liber, this book* (near me); *ista opinio, that opinion of yours*; *illis diebus, in those days*.

7. In phrases like *This is life*, the demonstrative agrees in Latin with the predicate noun: as,

Haec est vita. *This is life.*

Ea demum est vera felicitas. *This (and this only) is true happiness.*

Iste is used contemptuously: as, Iste homo, *that fellow*. It is also used of the other party to a suit, while *hic* means, *my client*.

8. Ille is joined to quidem (*indeed*), with a *concessive* force: as,

Non multum ille quidem nec saepe dicebat, sed Latine loquendo cuius erat par. *He did not speak much or often, but in speaking Latin he was equal to any one (= although he did not . . . yet . . .)*

It often begins a sentence to refer to a noun or noun-clause coming after: as,

Scitum est illud Catonis. *The following saying of Cato is good.*

Illud vereor ne fames in urbe sit. *This is what (the following is what) I am afraid of, that there will be famine in the city.*

In phrases like *My house and that of my friend*, Latin omits the demonstrative: as,

Domus mea et amici veniit. *My house and that of my friend have been sold.*

Note.—If a change of case is required, the noun is repeated: as, Liberi nostri cariores sunt amicorum liberis. *Our children are dearer than those of our friends.*

9. Idem, *same*, is often used to express *also*, *at the same time*, *at once*: as,

- Cicero orator erat idemque philosophus. *Cicero was an orator and, at the same time, a philosopher.*

10. Ipse, *self*, may be added for emphasis to a noun, pronoun, or numeral: as,

Se ipsum interfecit. *He killed himself.*

Triginta ipsi dies. *Exactly thirty days.*

- Adventu ipso hostes terruit. *By his mere (very) arrival, he frightened the enemy.*

Ipse is also added in the Gen. to a possessive pronoun to express the English *own*: as,

Mea ipsius culpa. *My own fault.*

Vestra ipsorum amicitia. *Your own friendship.*

This Gen. is in apposition with the Gen. implied in the Possessive (mea = mei, *of me*, Gen. of ego).

EXERCISE 32.

1. A law should be short. 2. Tell me when that friend of yours intends to set out for Rome. 3. It may be that he has advised them to surrender (*se dedo*). 4. You might have left the city immediately (use *possum*). 5. If you are fortunate, you will see the same honours in your own house as you see to-day in that of your sister's. 6. He thought that these people excelled the rest (*ceteri*) in valor. 7. You have a small town, no doubt, but a very prosperous one. 8. The very fear of danger often brings (*affero*) disaster upon us. 9. He said that he would write to us himself. 10. You will hardly know (*cognosco*) yourselves. 11. Does not the following fact (*res*) show his worth, that all the cities have surrendered to him? 12. My client (*hic*) begs you to consider what crimes the other party (*iste*) has himself committed. 13. Restore us the freedom you have yourselves snatched from us. 14. Ask him why he has sent us the same things as before. 15. I for my part exhort you to obey the laws. What is done cannot be undone. 16. Do not tell me that they have lost the opportunity of seizing the hill. 17. Do not inquire with regard to (*de*) that matter of yours. 18. If this could be done, life would not be highly valued. 19. They have fled from the fields to save themselves from the fire (use *causa*). 20. I did not know whether he praised or blamed us.

§ 33. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

1. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers to the subject of a verb: as, Tu te laudas. *You praise yourself.* Here te is a reflexive, referring to the subject of laudas.

The first and second personal pronouns are used as reflexives of the first and second persons: as,

Ego me laudo, *I praise myself*; vos vos laudatis, *you praise yourselves.*

Note.—The suffix -met is added to a reflexive for emphasis: as, An temet contemnis? *Do you despise yourself?*

2. The forms Sui, sibi, se, usually refer to the Subj. of the main verb: as,

Brutus se interfecit. *Brutus killed himself.*

Dixit se id fecisse. *He said that he did it* (Se refers to the subject of dixit).

Cicero effecerat ut Curius consilia Catilinae sibi proderet. *Cicero had managed that Curius should betray Catiline's plans to him* (Cicero).

3. If it may do so without ambiguity, *Se* may be used quite generally as a reflexive of the 3rd Pers.: as.

Reliquos *se* convertere cogit. *He compels the rest to turn (themselves).*

Haec *per se* expetenda sunt. *These things are to be sought in themselves (i.e., for their own sake.)*

So too: *Sui compos.* master of one's self; *sui fiducia,* self-confidence.

4. When *him, her,* etc., refer to the Subj. of a Subord. clause, *ipse,* is generally used: as,

Rogavit ut eos dederent qui ipsos prodidissent. *He asked them to surrender those who had betrayed them* (se would refer to the subject of *rogavit*).

5. The rules for the use of *suus* are the same as for the use of *se*. Thus:

(a) *Suus* usually refers to the subject of the main verb: as, *Eos gladio suo interfecit.* *He killed them with his sword.*

(b) If no ambiguity arises, *suus* is used without any reference to the subject of the Vb.: as,

Iussit eos ad sua quemque signa redire. *He ordered them to return, each to his own standard.*

Note.—*Quisque, each,* is often joined in this way with *suus*.

So too: *Sui cives,* one's own countrymen; *sua sponte,* of one's own accord.

(c) *His, her, its, their,* referring to the Subj. of a subord. clause, are expressed by the Gen. of *ipse*: as, *Rogavit ne se dederent iis qui inimici sui et ipsorum essent.* *He begged them not to give him up to those who were his enemies and theirs.*

Note.—In turning into Latin *He killed Caius with his own sword* (i.e., Caius's sword), it is better to make Caius the Subj. of a Pass. verb, in order that *suus* may, as usual, refer to the subject: as,

Caius gladio suo ab eo interfectus est. *Caius was killed by him with his own sword.*

6. *His, her, its, their,* are usually expressed by the Gen. of *Is*: as, *Dixit se eorum amicum esse.* *He said that he was their friend.*

The possessive is not expressed in Latin, if no ambiguity arises from its omission: as, *Patri pare.* *Obey your father.*

7. Inter se may be used to express the English reciprocal pronoun *one another*: as,

Furtim inter se aspiciabant. *They looked furtively at one another.*

Inter se differunt. *They differ from one another.*

EXERCISE 33.

1. Show yourselves worthy of your ancestors. 2. He says that he does not pity you but himself. 3. He said that there were many in the city who would never forgive themselves. 4. We all know that the man who cannot restrain himself, cannot restrain his soldiers. 5. Hardly anyone would deny that his character changes as old age approaches (*advenio*: Abl. Abs.). 6. I believe that he was indignant (*gravor*) because they asked him to pay back (*reddo*) the money. 7. He said that birds returned to their homes in the spring. 8. They have sold themselves for gold. 9. I see that you are ashamed of your conduct (*factum*) and that he is not. 10. You know how to praise yourselves. 11. He said that riches were dearer to him than honor. 12. They put him to death before he was able to do much harm to the credit (*fides*) of the country. 13. We remained in the city until we were able to elect the man we favored. 14. They have always differed from each other on politics (*res publica*). 15. Do not defer until your opportunity is lost. 16. If they gave him the money, nothing would have remained to buy food. 17. If he should pay the debts of the poor, he would soon have the greatest influence (use *multum valeo*) with them?

§ 34. QUI, QUISQUAM, AND QUIVIS.

1. The English *any* is expressed by the indef. pronoun *quis*, *quae* (or *qua*), *quid* (or *quod*), after *si* (*if*), *nisi* (*unless*), *ne*, *num*, *quo* or *quanto*: as,

Si quis hoc dicit, errat. *If anyone says this, he is wrong.*

Nisi quid vis, abibo. *Unless you want anything, I will go away.*

Nec quid nimis facias. *Do not do anything to excess.*

Num quis infantibus irascitur? *Is anyone angry with children?*

Quo quis callidior est, eo invidior. *The more cunning anyone is, the more hated he is.*

Note 1.—Instead of *quis*, *quisquam* may be used for an emphatic

any: as, Si quisquam sapiens erat, is erat. *If anyone was wise, he was.*

Note 2.—Of the two Neut. Sing. forms, quid is a pronoun, quod, an Adj.: as, Vereor ne quid subsit doli, *I am afraid lest any guile may lurk beneath*; num quod officium aliud maius est? *is any other duty greater?*

2. *Any*, in the sense of *any you please, every*, is quivis (from quis, *any*, and vis, *you wish*): as,

Non cuiusvis est adire Corinthum. *It is not every one who can visit Corinth.*

3. After a negative, *any* is quisquam, or—if used as an Adj.—ullus: as,

Nec quisquam hoc dicet. *Nor will anyone say this.*

Nec ulla res unquam atrocior fuit. *Nor was anything ever more atrocious.*

Note. Owing to the prominent place given to the negative, Nec quisquam, nec ullus, often begin a sentence.

4. Quisquam and ullus are also used for *any* after *virtual negatives* such as vix (*scarcely*), sine (*without*), and comparatives and interrogatives that expect the answer No: as,

Vix quisquam reperiri potuit. *Scarcely anyone could be found.*

Hoc sine ullo auxilio feci. *I have done this without any help.*

Fortior fuit quam quisquam amicorum. *He was braver than any of his friends (= none of his friends was so brave.)*

Num tu me existimas ab ullo malle mea legi quam a te? *Do you think that I prefer my works to be read by anyone rather than by you?*

5. *Any*, where it means *some* (i.e., *not none*), is aliquis or, rarely, quispiam: as,

Si ad aliquam spem commodi Fortuna nos reservavit, bene est. *If Fortune has reserved us for any hope of advantage, it is well.*

Nemo est sine aliqua virtute. *No one exists without some virtue.*

6. Other compounds of the indefinite quis are:

(a) Quidam, *some one, a certain one, a*, used of a person or thing known to the speaker but not fully described: as,

Tempore quodam quidam homo Aesopo lapidem impegit. *Once upon a time a certain man threw a stone at Aesop.*

Note.—Quidam is frequently used to apologise for the use of a bold or figurative expression: as, *In vigilia quadam mansi. I kept (as it were) upon the watch.*

(b) Nescio quis, *some or other*: used as a single word: as,
Nescio quis prope me loquitur. *Somebody or other is speaking near me.*

Hoc nescio quo pacto contigit. *This, in some strange way, has happened.*

(c) Quisque, *each, every*. It never begins a sentence: as,
Quod cuique contingit, id quisque teneat. *What falls to each, let each person keep.*

Quisque is frequently joined to the reflexive suus, in which case it is written after, never before, suus: as,

Suae quemque fortunae maxime poenitet. *Every one is greatly dissatisfied with his own fortune.*

It is frequently found with a superlative: as,
Ex philosophis optimus quisque confitetur multa se ignorare.
All the best of the philosophers admit that they are ignorant of many things.

(d) Equis: often used, instead of num quis, to express impatience: as,

Equis hoc ostium aperiet? *Will anyone open this door?*

(e) Quisnam, *who, pray?* frequently used for quis in questions, to express impatience: as,

Quidnam tibi negotii fuit in meis aedibus? *What business had you, pray, in my house?*

EXERCISE 34.

1. Scarcely letters can reach us. 2. It seemed as if all loyal men (use bon) were angry with us. 3. If all the loyal have perished, who is worthy to govern the country? 4. They felt that they could do anything to prevent Caesar from becoming king. 5. It is not everyone's fortune to attain such distinction. 6. Can anyone believe that he is ashamed of his mistake? 7. No one will attempt anything without some assistance. 8. I thought that he was more learned than any of his contemporaries (*aequalis*). 9. Was it of importance to anyone that this man should be spared? 10. Do not hesitate to say whether you need any help. 11. I am afraid that some

disaster is threatening. 12. They begged that some part of their work might be reduced (*minuo*). 13. I am willing to send anyone at all, to find out what is going on. 14. Some poet or other has said that ill got (*pario*) is ill spent (use *dilabor*). 15. Do you think that justice ever injured anyone? 16. Let each one keep his own. 17. They say that he wishes to see a somebody. 18. Whenever he heard anything of that kind, he always said that the story (*res*) was well invented. 19. Whether they elect him or not, the country will never be ashamed of him. 20. Tell the citizens whether you intend to support (*faveo*) him or not.

§ 35. THE INFINITIVE.

1. The Inf. is a neuter noun and is often used as the subject or object of a verb: as,

Humanum est errare. To err is human.

2. The Subj. of the Inf., if indefinite, is omitted: as,
Incolumem redire licet. One may return unhurt.

3. Many verbs take an Inf. after them to complete their meaning: as,

Vincere scis; victoria uti nescis. You know how to win a victory; you do not know how to use one.

Such verbs are called modal verbs (§24).

4. In the historians, the Pres. Inf. is often used instead of the Impf. Ind. especially *when a series of actions is described*: as,

Caesar cotidie eos frumentum flagitare. Caesar kept importuning them daily for corn.

Pars cedere, alii insequi; neque signa neque ordines observare. Some retired, others advanced; they observed neither standards nor ranks.

This is called the *historic Inf.* It is common in Livy.

5. The Subj. of the Inf. is in the Acc.: as,

Te hoc facere mirum est. That you should do this, is strange.

Decorum est domos nostras patere hospitibus. It is a fitting thing that our houses should be open to strangers.

This is a common use of the Inf. in Latin.

6. The subject of an Inf. depending on *dicor* (*I am said*), *videor* (*I seem*), and the like is in the Nom: as, *Homerus dicitur caecus fuisse. Homer is said to have been blind.*

7. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, the *Acc. with Inf.* is used as explained in §4.

TENSES OF THE INF. IN INDIRECT NARRATION.

8. The tense of the Inf. in Indir. Narr. does not change like the tense in the English *that*-clause, after a past tense: as,

Dixit nivem esse albam. *He said that snow was white* (direct = *nix est alba, snow is white*).

Dixit eos non ignoturos. *He said that they would not forgive* (direct = *non ignoscent, they will not forgive*).

Dixit eos cotidie dormiisse. *He said that they used to sleep every day* (direct = *dormiebant, they used to sleep*).

Dixit urbem munitam esse. *He said that the city had been fortified* (direct = *urbs munita est, the city has been fortified*).

Note.—The Perf. Inf. represents both the Impf., the Perf., and Plpf. Ind., of direct narration.

9. In translating English Indir. Narr. into Latin, it is necessary to find the tense of the direct. *The tense of the main verb of the direct is the tense of the Inf. in the Indir.:* as,

He said that he would go with the Tenth legion alone. Dixit se cum sola decima legione iturum (direct = *ibo, I will go*).

He said that he had learnt by experience. Dixit se experiendo didicisse (direct = *didici, I have learnt*).

He said that the gods were the friends of man. Dixit deos hominum amicos esse (direct = *Di amici sunt, the gods are friends*).

EXERCISE 35.

1. There are some who hate all this philosophising (*philosophor*).
2. He said that it was his to obey.
3. He often said that the end of life was near for all.
4. All know that a poet is born and not made.
5. Not to be covetous (*cupidus*) is money.
6. After the war was finished they ordered that anyone who had plundered should be put to death.
7. I believe that he gives little money to the poor.
8. He says that he will lead them back to camp at dawn.
9. He told us that he could not write Latin (*Latine*).
10. Did he say that he was a Roman citizen?) 11. returned as quickly as possible (*quam celerrime*), but could not find anyone in the house.
12. There was no

doubt that many of the enemy had been drowned (*absumo*) in the river. 13. All expected that he would attack the next day. 14. He said that to have faithfully studied the liberal arts, refined the manners (*emollio*). 15. It was reported that he was pressing on (*contendo*) to seize the city. 16. They answered that our credit (*fides*) had been much injured in the Provinces. 17. He ordered them to be told that he wished the road to be opened. 18. He said that before we could make war again, we must prepare another army. 19. By defeating him in two battles and capturing two camps, he easily persuaded the enemy to make peace.

§ 36. THE INFINITIVE CONTINUED. VERBS OF HOPING.

1. Verbs meaning *to hope, promise, swear* and *undertake*, are followed by a Fut. Inf. and not a Pres. Inf. as in English: as,

Sperat se diu victurum. *He hopes to live a long time.*

Iuro me haec facturum. *I swear to do it.*

Promittit se venturum. *He promises to come.*

Note.—After such verbs as the above, the Acc. of the pronoun must be used before the Inf.

2. *Memini, I remember*, is used with the Pres. Inf. (and not the Perf.) of a past event within the knowledge of the person referred to: as,

Meministis Tiberim corporibus compleri. *You remember that Tiber was filled with bodies.*

3. The Inf. is used in Exclamations: as,

Non puduisse verberare senem. *To think of not having been ashamed to beat an old man!*

4. The use of a verb of *saying* parenthetically is not common in Latin. Thus:

You were absent, he thought is Putavit te abesse.

Note.—*Inquit, he says*, is an exception. It is used to introduce the exact words of a speaker: as,

"Dicam tibi," inquit, "omnia." *"I will tell you," says he, "everything."*

5. In the use of the Acc. with Inf., care is taken to avoid the ambiguity that may arise from joining a personal subject and an object together. Thus:

Aio te Romanos vincere posse may mean *I say that you can conquer the Romans*, or, *I say that the Romans can conquer you*.

To avoid ambiguity the passive may be used: as,

Aio Romanos a te vinci posse.

6. An Inf. in Indir. for the Fut.-Pf. Act is formed from tuturum esse (or fore) and ut with the Perf. Subjun.: as,

Dicit fore ut ceciderit. *He says that he shall have fallen* (direct = cecidero, *I shall have fallen*).

Dixit fore ut cecidisset. *He said that he should have fallen*.

7. An Inf. for the Plup̄r. Ind. Pass. is formed from the Perf. Part. Pass. and fuisse: as, *He says that the city had been attacked before the king arrived*. Dicit urbem oppugnātam fuisse priusquam rex advenerit (direct = urbs oppugnata erat, *the city had been attacked*).

8. An Inf. for the Fut.-Perf. of deponent or Pass. verbs is formed from the Perf. Part. and fore: as,

He said that the war would soon be finished. Dixit debellatum mox fore (direct = debellatum mox erit, *the war will soon be finished*.)

9. Many verbs have no supine and, therefore, no Fut. Inf., which is formed from the Supine. Such verbs form their Fut. Inf. by means of fore or futurum esse (*to be about to be*), and ut with the Subjun.: as,

Dicit fore ut haec poscant. *He says that they will demand these things* (= *he says it to be about to be that they demand these things*).

Dixit fore ut ea poscerentur. *He said that these things would be demanded* (Imperf. of secondary sequence).

I think that it will happen to us. Puto fore ut contingat id nobis.

I thought that it would happen to us. Putavi fore ut contingeret id nobis.

He says that this will be demanded. Dicit fore ut hoc poscatur.

He said that that would be demanded. Dixit fore ut illud posceretur.

Note.—This construction is often used (as more convenient) even with verbs that have a Supine: as, Dicit fore ut rex mitteretur. *He said that the king would be sent*.

EXERCISE 36.

1. He exclaimed while dying that the gods would avenge him ?
He hopes that he will do something for his country. 3. I saw that

each of them was measuring the danger by his own fears. 4. We all hoped that he would recover. 5. To think that I should be here and you in Italy! 6. I believe that he will gladly learn it. 7. To live honorably is to live happily. 8. I believe that then this empire will have been destroyed. 9. "Go forth from a city," says he, 'where you are envied by all.' 10. They were afraid that they would be thrown from the Rock. 11. To think that he should estimate the lives of his countrymen at such a small price! 12. Even if you should elect the same magistrates again, they would never consent (*volo*) to propose this law again. 13. If anyone had injured me, I should not have avenged myself by violence. 14. They said that he was too good a man to be lost in that way. 15. Does not the sun by his motion measure out the course of the year? 16. He hoped to be able (*pres.*) to kill the king and seize the sovereignty. 17. He said that in that way I would have gained a crown. 18. He said that the city had been taken before they arrived.

§ 37. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

1. A comparative adverbial clause expresses *agreement* (or the opposite) with the statement of the main clause: as,

Ut sementem feceris, ita metes. *You shall reap according as you do* (lit., *shall have done*) *your seeding*.

The following words, used to introduce a comparative clause, are followed by *ac* (or, before a vowel, *atque*) for *than*, *as*, *from*, &c.:

Alius (*other*), aliter or secus (*otherwise*), similis (*like*), dissimilis (*unlike*), par (*equal*), pariter or aequè (*equally*), perinde or proinde or iuxta (*just*), pro eo (*in proportion*): as,

Se gerit longe aliter ac tu. *He behaves very differently from you.*

Simili fortuna atque antea utimur. *We are having the same fortune as before.*

Amicos aequè ac semet diligere oportet. *We should love our friends as much as ourselves* (lit., *one should*, &c.).

SYNTAX OF QUAM.

2. Unless with the Nom. or Acc., *than* after a comparative is expressed by *quam* and not by the Abl. (§ 8, 1): as,

Nemini tribuit plura quam tibi. *On none has he bestowed more than on you.*

Note 1.—Quam referring to an Acc. i. followed by an Acc. by *attraction*: as, Nunquam callidiorem quam eum vidi. *I have never seen a cleverer man than he.*

Note 2.—Quam is used after Tam in the sense of *as*: as, Tam mitis est quam tu. *He is as mild as you.*

It is also added to a Superl. to intensify: as, Quam maximam potest vastitatem efficit. *He spreads as wide devastation as possible.*

3. A comparative Adv. is usually followed by quam: as, Nihil dulcius quam luscinia cantat. *Nothing sings more sweetly than the nightingale.*

Note.—Two Adjs. or Advs. are often joined idiomatically by quam: as, Ferocius quam prudentius pugnant. *They fight with more spirit than sense.*

Consilia eius celeriora quam tutiora erant. *His plans were more rapid than safe.*

4. Comparative clauses introduced by quam take the construction of the main clause or the Subjunc. with or without ut: as,

Nec ultra saevit quam satis erat. *Nor did he show any needless cruelty (lit., nor was he cruel further than was enough).*

Peressus est omnia potius quam (ut) indicaret. *He endured everything rather than inform.*

Eum aggreſſamur potius quam propulsemus. *Let us attack rather than repel him.*

Note.—In the same way, quam connects two Infs.: as, Dixit se quidvis potius peressurum quam exiturum. *He said that he would endure anything rather than go forth.*

5. Comparative clauses of condition involving a *supposition*, require the Subjun., and (unless after a past tense) the Pres. or Perf.: as, Honores petunt, quasi honeste vixerint. *They are seeking office, just as if they had lived honorably.*

Eius crudelitate horrebant, quasi ipse adesset. *They feared his cruelty, as if he had been present himself.*

Note.—This is an apparent violation of the principle of Class III (§31) of Conditional sentences. The fulfilment of the condition is viewed as future and improbable (Class II, b).

6. The following conjunctions are joined in this way with the Subjun.: Tanquam si, quasi, velut si, *as if*: as, Tanquam si hoc difficile sit. *As if this were hard.*

Sol of ans

7 The English *the...the* with two comparatives, is expressed in Latin in two ways:—

(a) By Quo...eo (or quanto...tanto) with two comparatives: as Quo (or quanto) quis est melior, eo (or tanto) difficilior suspicatur. *The better a man is, the more difficultly he has in suspecting.*

(b) By Ut quisque...ita with two superlatives: as, Ut quisque vir optimus est, ita difficillime suspicatur. *The better a man is, &c.*

Note.—This might also be translated: *In proportion to a man's goodness, &c., or, In proportion as a man is good, &c.*

8. The following are idiomatic uses of ut, as, with the Ind.:—

(a) Ut fortasse vere, sic parum utiliter respondit. *Though his answer was true, yet it was not very expedient (concessive and restrictive)*

(b) Valde frugi erat, ut servus. *He was very thrifty for a slave.*

(c) Multum, ut illis temporibus, valuit. *He had great influence for that time.*

(d) Multae etiam, ut in homine Romano, litterae. *A good knowledge of literature, too, for a Roman.*

(e) Pauca, ut semper taciturnus erat, respondit. *With his usual reticence, he made a brief reply.*

(f) Magnus pavor, ut in re tam improvisa, fuit. *The panic was great, as was natural in so unexpected an occurrence.*

EXERCISE 37.

1. I will make him as quiet (*placidus*) as a sheep. 2. He used to say that the diseases of the mind were more fatal (*exitiosus*) than those of the body. 3. He shall be punished as he deserves. 4. I will serve you as though you had bought me for money. 5. You are acting otherwise than I could have wished. 6. The more a man reads, the less often he knows. 7. I spoke just as I felt. 8. Our losses are too great to be estimated (§29, 2.c). 9. We receive no news from Asia, just as if the Province were closed. 10. They will give you greater honors than they did your father. 11. Let us rejoice rather than complain. 12. He adds that he will be killed rather than that I shall be harmed (*violatus*). 13. You will then be as happy as I. 14. You think (*sentio*) differently from me about this matter. 15. He fled (*confugio*) to the river before they could seize him. 16. I lived there, just as if I was in my own house. 17. After dismissing the army, he

returned to Rome. 18. He sent him into Bactria to prepare food for the army. 19. He always prevented the army from pillaging. 20. Do not take away from this man an office to which he has been elected by the whole people. 21. He is as mild as ever (*tam quam*). 22. As was to be expected in such a crisis, the general himself was the only man unmoved.

§ 38. EXCEPTIONAL FORMS FOR THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE.

1. Instead of the usual forms for the *main* clause, of the conditional sentence the following forms in the Indic. are found:—

(a) The Act. Periphrastic (§18, 2.)

(b) The Pass. Periphrastic (§15, 7.)

(c) A verb or phrase denoting *duty*, *possibility*, or *propriety*, like *possum*, *oportet* (*it is necessary*), *debeo* (*I ought*): as,

Quid, si hostes ad urbem veniant, facturi estis? *What would you do, if the enemy should come to the city?* (here *facturi estis*, are you likely to do, do you intend to do, is another form for *faciatis*, would you do, the ordinary form).

Si unum diem morati essetis, omnibus moriendum fuit. *If you had delayed a single day, all would have had to die* (i.e., would have died).

Si similem hostem habuisset, magna clades accipi potuit. *If he had had a similar enemy, a great defeat would (or might) have been sustained.*

Hunc, si ulla pietas in te fuisset, colere debebas. *This man, if there had been any affection in you, you should have* (i.e., would have) *honored.*

Si ita putasset, melius ei fuit. *If he had thought so, it would have been better for him.*

Note.—The verb of the main clause, in such cases, is in the Ind. and not in the Subjun., as in the ordinary forms of the Conditional sentence.

2. The forms given above are chiefly employed when the Conditional sentence is used in a dependent clause: as,

Haud est dubium quin urbem, si possit, capturus sit. *There is no doubt that he would take the city, if he could* (dependent for capiat. he would take).

Non dubitavi quin urbem capturus fuerit. *I did not doubt that he would have taken the city* (consecutive sequence: = cepisset, he would have taken).

Rogo te quid factururus fueris. *I ask you what you would have done.* ✓

Tanta caedes fuit ut non superfuturus fueris. *So great was the slaughter that you would not have survived.*

And so in the Pass.:

Eo fit ut, hoc si iussissem, clades accipienda fuerit. *Therefore it happens that, if I had given the order, a disaster would have been sustained* (or accipi potuerit).

Note.—These examples show the Roman fondness for strict adherence to rule. A form was found which would express that a clause was (a) conditional; (b) consecutive, an indirect question, etc. (i.e. a double dependence).

3. An *if*-clause with the Subjun. is loosely attached to a single word with the main idea suppressed: as,

Ausculato, si quid dicas. *I am listening to see if you say anything* (i.e., *intending to speak if you should say anything*).

Exspectabat si hostem elicere posset. *He was waiting in the hope that he could draw out the enemy* (i.e., *if he could draw the enemy out, about to fight them*).

Mortem mihi denuntiavit, si pugnavissem. *He threatened me with death in case I fought* (main clause of the conditional sentence contained in mortem: = si pugnaveris, moriere).

Nuntium ad te misi, si forte non audiisses. *I sent a messenger to you, in case you had not heard* (here the *si*-clause expresses purpose and therefore has the subjun.; = *that you might hear*).

EXERCISE 38.

1. What would you do, if they should see you? (*Act. periphr.*)
2. Tell me what you would do, if they should see you.
3. What would you have done, if they had prevented you from coming?
4. There is no doubt what you have done, if they had prevented you

from coming. 5. The enemy were waiting in case our army should cross the river. 6. If you had wished to capture the city, you should have collected a larger army. 7. There was no doubt that, if you had wished to capture the city, you should have collected a larger army. 8. Can you doubt that, if his plans had succeeded (*procedo*), we should have been put to death? 9. The whole army might have been (*possum*) destroyed, if the victors had followed up (*persequor*) their victory. 10. I asked them whether, if the rest were killed, he would be likely to escape. 11. There is no doubt that, if you do not return, you will injure all of us. 12. Whether you were willing or unwilling, I shall always be grateful. 13. Even if he had been a stranger, you ought (*debeo*) to have helped him. 14. They poured round in the hope of finding some means of approach. 15. Had he done so, there is no doubt that he would have done it to the public disadvantage (*contra rem p.*). 16. Why was he exempted (use *solvo*) from the law, in case he should be absent from the city? 17. The enemy were waiting, in the hope that we would cross. 18. There is no doubt that, if I had ordered it, you would have done it. 19. There was no doubt that, if he had not been there, the city would have been taken.

§ 39. INDIRECT NARRATION (ORATIO OBLIQUA)

1. The forms of the Inf. in Ind. Narration have been discussed in § 35.

2. Subord. clauses in Ind. Narr. are in the Subjun. and the tense of the verb is determined by the Law of Sequence already explained in § 20: as,

Dicit se eos, quos cepit, domum misisse. *He says that he has sent home those whom he has captured* (direct = Eos quos cepi, domum misi, *those whom I have captured, I have sent home*).

Dixit se eos quos cepisset, domum misisse (cepit changed to cepisset, in accordance with the Law of Sequence).

Dixit se, quoties potuisset, rediisse. *He said that he returned, as often as he could* (direct = Quoties potui, redii, *I returned as often as I could*).

Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd person in Indir. become as in English pronouns of the 3rd person. Thus:

ego, nos	become se
meus, noster	" suus
tu, vos	" ille, illi
tuus, vester	" illius, illorum
hic, iste	" ille, is

Adverbs of *present* time become (after a secondary tense) adverbs of *past* time. Thus:—

nunc	becomes iam, tunc
heri (<i>yesterday</i>)	" pridie (<i>the day before</i>)
hodie (<i>to-day</i>)	" illo die (<i>that day</i>)
cras (<i>to-morrow</i>)	" postridie (<i>next day</i>)

So:—Hic (*here*) becomes ibi (*there*).

3. A statement in a subord. clause of reported speech, made on the authority of the reporter himself, is in the Ind. and not in the Subjun.: Thus: Certior factus est Xerxes id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur. *Xerxes was informed that this was intended. i.e., to break down the bridge which he (Xerxes) had built over the Hellespont..* Here the Subord. Rel. clause (*quem . . . fecerat*) has the Ind. because the statement is vouched for by the historian himself.

4. The Imperative of direct is in the Subjun. in indirect (after a secondary tense, in the Impf. Subjun., in accordance with the law of sequence): as,

Venire ne dubitaret. *Let him not hesitate to come (he said)* (direct = noli dubitare, ne dubitaveris or ne dubites).

Ne cunctarentur. *Let them not delay (he said)* (direct = ne cunctamini, do not delay).

5. Questions that expect an answer (in the 2nd. Pers. in direct) are put in the *subjunctive* in Indirect; rhetorical questions (exclamations and appeals, usually in the 1st Pers. in direct), in the *Inf*: as,

(Scripsit) quid de praeda faciendum esse censerent? (*He wrote*) *what did they think should be done with regard to the booty?* (direct = quid . . . censetis? *what do you think?*).

Quid esse turpius? cur eos dubitare? *What was more dishonorable? why did they hesitate?* (direct = quid est turpius? cur dubitatis? *what is more dishonorable? why do you hesitate?*)

6. A Fut.-Perf. Ind. in a Subord. clause of direct narration, becomes, in indirect, Perf. Subjun. after a primary tense and Pluperf. Subjun. after a secondary: as,

Dicit eum qui id fecerit, poenas daturum esse. *He says that the one who does this, shall be punished.*

Dixit eum qui id fecisset, poenas daturum esse. *He said that the one who did that, should be punished* (direct = qui id fecerit, poenas dabit, *he who shall have done that, shall be punished*).

7. Indir. narration is often suddenly introduced into the narrative by the historians, without the governing verb of saying being expressed: as,

Regulus reddi captivos. . . it esse utile: illos enim bonos duces esse. *Regulus denied that it was expedient that the captives should be restored: that they were good leaders.*

Note.—*Nego* is the common Latin word for *I say not*.

EXERCISE 39.

N.B.—The tense of the main verb of direct is the required tense of the Inf. in Indirect.

1. He promised that he would not be wanting to his friends. 2. He called out (*clamo*) that, as far as he could, he would follow their steps. 3. He declared that the death of the father would not profit them until (*priusquam*) they had banished the son. 4. He said that he was ashamed of a country that could banish a man of such ability. 5. Did you not think that the women and children whom they had captured, should have been spared? 6. He was afraid that a nation which had been so shamefully betrayed (*prodo*), would never trust us again. 7. He said that he was ready to die for the country. Must they not all die some day? 8. He declared that they ought to march (*eo*) at once: that they could easily reach the d-file (use *enim*). 9. The law (he said) forbade anything to belong to anyone who refused (*nolo*) to obey the magistrates. Let them, therefore, take away all his property from him. 10. He said that no one, who was worthy of his country, held such a view (use *sentio*.) Let them lay side (*pono*) their fear. Would they ever have such an opportunity again?

§ 40. THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE IN INDIRECT NARRATION.

The rules of Ind. Narration may be readily applied to the forms of the Conditional Sentence. Thus:

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
1. Pecuniam si habet, dat. becomes <i>If he has money, he gives it.</i>	Dicit se, si pecuniam habet, dare. <i>He says that if he has money, he gives it.</i>
Pecuniam si habuit, dedit or (dabat). <i>If he had money, he gave it.</i>	Dicit se, si pecuniam habuerit, dedisse. <i>He says that if he had money, he gave it.</i>
2. (a) Pecuniam si habebit (or habuerit), dabit. <i>If he has money, he will give it.</i>	Dicit se, si pecuniam habebit (or habuerit), daturum esse. <i>He says that if he has money, he will give it.</i>
(b) Pecuniam si habeat, det. <i>If he should have money, he would give it.</i>	Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat, daturum esse. <i>He says that if he should have money, he would give it.</i>
3. (a) Pecuniam si haberet, daret <i>If he had money (now), he would give it.</i>	Dicit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum fuisse. <i>He says that if he had money (now), he would give it.</i>
(b) Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset. <i>If he had had money, he would have given it.</i>	Dicit se, si pecuniam habuisset, daturum fuisse. <i>He says that if he had had money, he would have given it.</i>

Note 1.—The future (habebit) in the *if*-clause of direct becomes Pres. Subjun. (habeat) in the Indir., after a primary tense.

Note 2.—The Pres. Subjun. (det), in the main clause, becomes Fut. Inf. (daturum esse) in indirect.

Note 3.—The Imperf. and Pluperf. Subjun. in the main clause (i.e., daret and dedisset), are expressed in indirect by the Fut. Part. with fuisse (i.e., daturum fuisse, *to have been about to give*).

After a secondary tense, the verb of the *if*-clause is changed in accordance with the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 20). Thus:—

DIRECT.		OBLIQUE.
1. Pecuniam si habet, dat.	becomes	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, dare.
Pecuniam si habuit, dedit (or dabat).	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam habuisset, dedisse.
2. (a) Pecuniam si habebit (or habuerit), dabit.	"	Dixit se, pecuniam haberet (or habuisset), daturum esse.
(b) Pecuniam si habeat, det.	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum esse.
3. (a) Pecuniam si haberet, daret.	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum fuisse.
(b) Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset.	"	Dixit se, si pecuniam habuisset, daturum fuisse.

Note 1.—The Fut.-Perf. in the *if*-clause of direct, becomes Pluperf. Subjun. in indirect.

Note 2.—For 2 (b), the form Dixit fore ut, si pecuniam haberet, daret, is often found (§ 36 9).

oluto
EXERCISE 40.

1. If anyone should attempt (*conor*) it, no one would oppose him.
2. Do you think that if anyone had attempted it, they would have opposed () him?
3. He said that, if the harvest were large, the country would be rich.
4. Do you think that, if he had been so ignorant of the military art, he would have been victorious that day?
5. I am persuaded that, if he feels regret for his act, they will acquit (*absolvo*) him.
6. If I had received the letter, I should have hastened as quickly as possible (*quam and superl.*) to Rome.
7. Although he had promised to spare them, they were led straightway to death.
8. He answered that if he had known the danger, he would never have gone out.
9. If you used your own judgment, you would do better than anyone.
10. Do not you think that, if he were here, all would be well?
11. And let no one say that there is no hope anywhere (*usquam*).
12. If you detain us, we shall arrive too late (*sero*).
13. They sent envoys to ask why we had not assisted them.
14. Do

you think that he is a proper person to be received? 15. They said that he ought to have been appointed (*praeficio*) to the army, even if he had been in a private station (*privatus*).

§ 41. INDIRECT NARRATION CONTINUED. REPORTED SPEECHES.

The use of Indirect Narration is much more common in Latin than in English. It is of very common occurrence in the Roman historians.

The following passage from Caesar will illustrate its use in reporting speeches:

INDIRECT NARRATION.

CAESAR RECEIVES AN EMBASSY FROM THE HELVETII.

Is (the Chief) ita cum Caesare egit. Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem (se) ituros atque ibi futuros ubi Caesar eos esse voluisset. . . . Sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur veteris incommodi populi Romani. . . . Se a patribus didicisse ut virtute contenderent.

His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati commemorassent, memoria teneret. . . . Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam deponere posse?

The Chief of the Embassy treated with Caesar as follows: If (he said) the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetii, that they would go to that part of the country and remain, where Caesar should wish them to remain. But if he should persist in harassing them in war, let him remember the reverse of long ago sustained at their hands by Rome. That the Helvetii had learned from their fathers to fight valorously.

To this Caesar made the following reply: That he felt all the less hesitation because he remembered the incidents the ambassadors had mentioned. But if he was willing to forget the insult of long ago, could he also lay aside the recollection of recent wrongs?

THE SAME IN DIRECT NARRATION.

Is ita cum Caesare egit: "Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibimus atque ibi erimus ubi Caesar nos

esse voluerit. Sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscere veteris incommodi populi Romani . . . Nos a patribus didicimus ut virtute contendamus."

His Caesar ita respondit: "Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas legati commoraverunt, memoria teneo. . . . Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam deponere possum?"

The Chief of the embassy treated with Caesar as follows: "If the Roman people will make peace with the Helvetii, we will repair to that part of the country and remain wherever Caesar shall wish us to remain. But if you persist in harassing us in war, remember the reverse of long ago sustained at our hands by Rome. We have learned from our fathers to fight valorously."

To this Caesar made the following reply: "I feel all the less hesitation because I remember the incidents the ambassadors have mentioned. But if I am willing to forget the insult of long ago, can I also lay aside the recollection of more recent wrongs?"

Note 1.—Faceret, is in the Subjun. because in a Subord. Cl. in Indir., and Impf. in accordance with the law of sequence.

Note 2.—Ituros, Fut. Inf. for the main verb of direct (in the Fut. Ind.)

Note 3.—Voluisset, Plpf. Subjun. for the Fut. Pf. of direct and after a past tense.

Note 4.—Reminisceretur, Impf. Subjun. after a past tense for the Imperat. of direct.

Note 5.—Se, for the nos of direct.

Note 6.—Num posse, the Inf. of indirect for a rhetorical question (in the 1st pers.) of the direct.

EXERCISE 41.

Translate into Latin and then turn into indirect narration after *Dixit*:

A.

1. I will do what I think is for the public interest (*e re publica*).
2. Seek an opportunity for protracting (*traho*) the war.
3. If we retreat, we shall benefit ourselves; if we stand our ground, we shall benefit the enemy.
4. Why do you disparage (*elevo*) the courage of your leaders?

B.

1. The liberty of the plebs, in whom resides (*use sum*) the whole strength of the nation, has been sold for gold.
2. What do you suppose is the reason (*causa*) for this?
3. Do not forget that you are free men.
4. If you do this (*fut. pf.*), you will be glad.

C.

1. Rome is laying a heavy burden upon me.
2. I will try to be worthy of the high opinion you have of me.
3. How will you enrol (*conscribo*) so many men?
4. Remember that Rome is despised by all.
5. If you defeat them in the field, all will fear you.

D.

1. The hill is held by the enemy.
2. If you wish to make peace, you will send an envoy to Caesar.
3. If we had taken away their ships from them, they would not have attacked us again.
4. Go away and forget your wrongs.
5. What do you want? Why are you asking us for the same things again?
6. Unless you go away, I will consider you all as (*pro*) enemies.

§ 42. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT. VIRTUAL OBLIQUE. ASSIMILATION.

1. The deliberative Subjun. after a past tense becomes Impf. in Indirect narration: as,

Nesciebat quo verteret. *He did not know where he should turn* (direct = quo vertam? Where shall I turn?)

2. A Rel. pronoun in indirect, when used (as it so frequently is) as a connective, is usually joined with the Acc. and Inf., but sometimes with the Subjun: as, Dixit id cognitum esse omnibus, de quo falsam opinionem ortam esse. *He said that this was known to all and that a false opinion had arisen with regard to it.*

3. A Rel. clause in Indir., when its verb is omitted, has its subject in the Acc: as,

Dixit se eadem, quae ceteri sentirent, sentire. *He said that he was of the same opinion as the rest.*

But: Dixit se eadem, quae ceteros, sentire.

4. A Subjun. is used (§28, 1) in a Subord. clause to express that the statement of the clause depends on some verb of *saying* understood: as,

Laudat Panaetius Africanum quod fuerit abstinens. *Panaetius praises Africanus because (as he says) he was abstemious.*

This is called *virtual oblique*.

Virtual oblique is used also when the words of another are quoted: as,

Frumentum, Aedui quod polliciti essent, flagitabat. *He demanded from the Aedui the corn which they had promised.*

5. The verb of a Subor. clause, when depending upon a verb in the Subjun., is itself in the Subjun. This is called *assimilation*: as, Concedit ut absim cum aliquid agatur. *He allows me to be away when something is going on.*

6. Verbs of *saying* and *thinking* are not used parenthetically in a sentence in Latin Thus:

You were, he said, mistaken. Dixit te errare.

Credo, *I believe*, so used, has an ironical sense: as,

Credo, etiam tabulae proferentur. *The account-books, I suppose, will even be produced.*

Phrases like ut aiunt (*as they say*), ut opinor (*as I think*), ut puto (*as I fancy*), are, however, found.

Inquit, *he says* (or *said*) is never used to introduce Indir. narration. It is used in quoting the exact words of another. It is placed after the first two or three words of the quotation: as,

At Caesar: "Minime vero," inquit, "hoc probo." *But Caesar said: "I by no means approve of this."*

EXERCISE 42.

1. This man, they tell me, was born rich. 2. He did not know what he should do (*deliberative*). 3. I suppose that you are influenced (*moveo*) by the same things as I. 4. He used to walk at night because he could not sleep. 5. He wondered that one augur did not smile (*surrideo*) when he went past (*praeter*) another (*alter*). 6. He sent them another king, as the one he had sent was useless. 7. You complain that we do not hold the same views (use *sentio*). 8. He did not know what he ought to answer (*delib.*). 9. He used to say that every one was the architect (*faber*) of his own fortune.

10. No friendship can exist (*esse*) between us, if you remain in Gaul.
 11. He answered that no friendship could exist with them, if they remained in Gaul. 12. He begged them not to leave his death unavenged. 13. He was sent there to consult with regard to the ransoming (*redimo*) of the prisoners (*captivus*). 14. You should not always consult your own interests. 15. I believe that unless we had assisted them, all would have perished. 16. No one will ever forget his native (*patrius*) city. 17. He pited an army (he said) that was not worthy of a better leader. 18. It is said that after plundering the houses, they set them on fire (use *ignem inicere*). 19. Ask him whether he will attack them while they sleep. 20. They are determined not to survive (*super-sum*) the capture of the city.

§43. SPECIAL IDIOMS: OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. GERUND WITH PREPOSITION. ATTRACTION OF VOICE.

1. A Gen. is used with nouns derived from verbs, to denote the *subject* of the verb implied in the governing noun: as,

Morsus canis. *The bite of a dog.* Here canis represents the subject of the verb mordeo (*bite*) implied in morsus.

It is called the *Subjective Genitive*

2. A Gen. is also used, with nouns derived from verbs, to denote the *object of a verb implied in a governing noun*: as,

Timor mortis. *The fear of death.*

Here mortis represents the object of timeo (*I fear*), implied in timor. Thus, propter mortis timorem = quod timeo mortem (*because I fear death*).

This is called the *Objective Genitive*.

An Obj. Gen. may represent not only an Acc. but (a) a Dat., (b) an Abl., or (c) a Prep. and its case: as,

(a) Quis enim est optimarum artium studio praestantior?

Who is more distinguished by zeal for liberal culture? (artium studio representing artibus studere).

(b) Ea magis ex aliorum contentione quam ipsa per se cognosci possunt.

Those qualities can be understood rather from a comparison with others than independently (aliorum = cum aliis. Lit. = *the race he runs with others*).

(c) Hiemis enim non avaritiae perfugium maiores nostri in sciorum tectis esse voluerunt.

Our ancestors wished that there should be in the homes of our subjects a refuge from winter, not a retreat for rapacity (hiemis = ab hieme; avaritiae = subject. Gen.).

So too: Aditus laudis, *an avenue to distinction* (laudis for ad laudem); fiducia virium, *confidence in strength*; dissensio rei publicae, *disagreement on politics*; contentio honorum, *a struggle for office* (Cf. contendo de).

Note.--Only a Gen. case can regularly depend on a noun.

3 The Gerund and Gerundive are used with the Prepositions ad, in, de, e(ex), but rarely with any other: as,

Ad has res conficiendas spatium datur. *Time is given for accomplishing these things.*

In voluptate spernenda virtus cernitur. *Virtue is discerned in the despising of pleasure.*

4. Instead of other prepositions with a Gerund an equivalent construction is used: as, Damnatus est quia pecunias cepisset. *He was condemned for taking money.*

Hoc feci. te non sentiente. *I did it without your perceiving it.*

Eum damnant inauditum. *They condemn him without hearing him.*

Nunquam exercitum eduxit nisi explorato locorum situ. *He never led out his army without examining the position of the ground.*

Dicit nec cuiquam persuadet. *He speaks without persuading anyone.*

Re infecta rediimus. *We returned without accomplishing anything.*

Cadere illa non possunt ut haec non concidant. *Those cannot fall without these falling with them.*

5. Coepi means both *I begin* and *I began*. The active form is used when an Active Inf. follows: as,

Urbem aedificare coepit. *He began to build the city.*

The passive form (coeptus sum) is used when a Pass. Inf. follows: as,

Urbs aedificari coepta est. *The city began to be built.*

This is an example of *Attraction of voice*.

Compare also: Veteres orationes legi sunt desitae. *The speeches of the olden time have ceased to be read.*

EXERCISE 43.

1. They felt respect (*verecundia*) for neither gods nor men. 2. He said that there was some consolation for their ill-luck. 3. Self-commiseration took possession (*capio*) of their minds. 4. Have they lost all interest (*cura*) in their own condition? (*res*) 5. Discrimination (*discrimen*) between things human and things divine was unimpaired (*salvus*). 6. Man has an immoderate desire for wealth. 7. A decision (*discrimen*) was allowed them with regard to all these matters at once. 8. Are all your plans formed for attacking the enemy? 9. This was their first place of refuge (*receptaculum*) from that unlucky field (*pugna*). 10. You showed what kind of magistrate you would have been. 11. He said that he had been thanked (use *agere gratias*) by the people because he had not despaired of the country. 12. He was too brave a man to be put to death. 13. Whether it is in the public interest (*e re p.*) or not, may be questioned; but whether it is or not, it is approved by all. 14. They never saw him without reviling him (use *ut non*). 15. He returned to Athens without waiting for the army. 16. These squabbles (*contentio*) were so disagreeable (*acerbus*) to me that I would never have returned, unless you had invited me. 17. If they had had a leader to be compared with him, victory would not have failed (*desum*) them. 18. Ask them what they would have done, if an enemy had come to the city. 19. What do you mean (*sibi velle*) by praising me? (use *quod*). 20. Shall you ask him to leave the city immediately?

§ 44. THE NUMERAL.

1. Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except (1) *unus*, *one*; *duo*, *two*; *tres*, *three*; (2) the hundreds, beginning with *ducenti*, *two hundred*; (3) the plural of *mille*, *a thousand*.

2. *Mille*, *a thousand*, is indeclinable, in the Sing., but in the Pl. it is declined.

Note.—*Mille*, in the sing. is either an Adj. or a noun: as, *Mille homines* or *mille hominum*, *a thousand men*. In the Pl. it is always a noun: as, *Decem milla hominum*, *ten thousand men*.

3. Compound numbers like 21, 22, &c., when between 20 and 100, are, written *unus et viginti*, *duo et viginti*, or *viginti unus*, *viginti duo* &c.

Above *one hundred*, the greater number precedes (usually without *et*): as, *Ducenti unus*, or *ducenti et unus*, *two hundred and one*: as,

Caesar Gallorum duo milia quingentos sex cepit. Caesar captured 2,506 Gauls.

4. *First, second, third*, in enumerations, is *unus, alter, tertius*: as, *E quibus generibus, unum est ex iis qui...*, *alterum ex iis*, &c. *Of these classes the first consists of those who... the second of those, etc.*

5. The ordinals are used in expressing dates: as, *Anno post urbem conditam septingentesimo quinquagesimo quarto natus est Christus. Christ was born 754 years after the foundation of the city.*

A.D. millesimo octingentesimo octogesimo tertio = A.D. 1883.

Anno urbis conditae quinquagesimo quarto. In the 45th year of the building of the city (i.e. the beginning of the Roman era, subtract from 754 for year B.C.).

Quota hora est? Hora prima, secunda, tertia, &c. What hour is it? Seven, eight, nine o'clock, etc. (i.e., reckoning from sunrise at six o'clock; time was measured by a sun-dial).

6. The distributive numerals are used:—

(a) To express *so many at a time, so many each*: as, *Pueris binos libros donavit. He gave the boys two books apiece.*

(b) To express multiplication: as, *Bis bina quattuor sunt. Twice two is four.*

(c) With substantives that have no Sing. or a different meaning in the Sing. and Pl., respectively: as, *Bina castra, two camps. (Castrum is a fort; duo castra = two forts).*

Note 1.—With nouns like *castra*, the Pl. of *unus* is used for *one*, not *singuli*: as, *Ex unis duas mihi conficies nuptias. You will make me two weddings out of one.*

Note 2.—When the distributives are used with a numeral adverb, they have the force of cardinals: as,

Ter deni, thrice ten; vicies centena, two thousand.

7. Fractions with 1 for the numerator are expressed by an ordinal with *pars*: as,

Tertia pars, $\frac{1}{3}$; centesima pars, $\frac{1}{100}$ (= 1 per cent); millesima pars, $\frac{1}{1000}$. Dimidium, however, is $\frac{1}{2}$.

8. Where the numerator is one less than the denominator, the cardinals with *partes* are used: as,

Duae partes, $\frac{2}{3}$; *tres partes*, $\frac{3}{4}$.

Tres quintae is $\frac{3}{5}$; *quattuor septimae*, $\frac{4}{7}$; *decumae* (*tenths*) *tithes*.

Dimidio plures, *half as many again* (= *more by half*); *duplo plures*, *double as many*; *alterum tantum*, *as much again*.

9. *Ago* is *abhinc*, followed by the words expressing time, in the Acc. or Abl.: as,

Abhinc decem dies (or *diebus*) *Romam profectus est*. *He set out for Rome ten days ago*.

Note.—*Abhinc* precedes the expression of time.

10. The following phrases may be noted:

Decem annos post. *Ten years after* (*post* is an adverb).

Decem annos ante. *Ten years before*.

Nonaginta annos natus. *Ninety years old*.

Minor decem annos natus. *Less than ten years old*.

Maior decem annos natus. *More than ten years old*.

Priore anno quam e vita excessit. *The year before he died*.

Pridie quam pervenit. *The day before he arrived*.

Postridie quam . . . *The day after* . . .

§ 45. THE DAYS OF THE MONTH.

1. Three days were used to divide the Roman month, the *Kalends*, (*Kalendae*), *Nones* (*Nonae*) and *Ides* (*Idus*): as,
Kalendis Martiis interfectus est. *He was killed on the Ides of March*.

Ad Kalendas solvet. *He will pay by the Kalends*.

Nonis Decembribus. *On the Nones of December*.

The *Kalends* fell on the 1st, the *Nones* on the 7th or 9th, and the *Ides* on the 13th or 15th.

In March, July, October, May, the *Ides* were on the fifteenth day.

The *Nones* in these four months fell on the 7th (9 days before the *Ides*, according to the Roman method of reckoning).

In the other eight months, the *Ides* fell on the 13th and the *Nones* on the 5th.

Each month had the same number of days as at present.

2. The names of the twelve Roman months are:

Ianuarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Iunius, Iulius (or Quintilis), Augustus (or Sextilis), September, October, November, December.

These are all Adjs. and are used in agreement with Kalendae, Nonae, Idus.

A particular date is either on one of these days or so many days *before* one of them.

3. *The 3rd day before the Ides of March* would naturally be Die tertio ante Idus Martias. Instead of that, they used Ante diem tertium Idus Martias (as if ante governed diem), or A.d. III Id. Mart.

The 3rd day before the Ides of March would, again, naturally be the 12th: but as they counted in the day from which they reckoned, it is really the 13th of March.

In turning our dates into Latin, I must, therefore, be added before the subtraction is made: as,

I was present on August 3rd. A. d.iii. Non. Aug. adfui (date of Nones of August = the 5th; $5+1-3=3$).

He was born Sept. 23rd. Natus est a. d. ix. Kal. Oct. ($32-23=9$; 30 days in Sept. + 1 in Oct. + 1).

He died on the 3rd of June. A.d. iii. Non. Iun. mortuus est (Nones on 5th; $6-3=3$).

I spoke in the Senate on October 21st. A. d. xii. Kal. Nov. in Senatu dixi ($31+2-21=12$).

Note.—The phrase ante diem came to be regarded as an indeclinable noun, and was joined with a preposition: as,

He invited me to dinner for Nov. 16th. In a.d. xvi Kal. Dec. me in coenam invitavit.

§ 46. ROMAN MONEY.

1. The common coins in use in Rome during the last two centuries of the Republic were the As (over 1 cent), the *sesterce*, the *denarius*, and the *aureus*. The As was of copper, the sesterce and denarius of silver, and the aureus of gold.

2. The following table gives the relative value of these coins, true for approximately the last two centuries of the Republic.

TABLE OF ROMAN MONEY

4 asses = 1 sestertius (5 cents).

4 sestertii = 1 denarius (20 cents).

25 denarii = 1 aureus (\$4.50)

3. The sesterce* was the common unit for expressing sums of money at Rome.

It was used as follows:—

(a) Up to 2,000 the Num. Adj. was used with sestertius: as, Centum sestertii, *a hundred sesterces*; undeni sestertii, *eleven sesterces each*.

(b) Above 2,000 and up to a million, the Neut. Plur. sestertia was used for the thousands: as,

Sestertia tria et quadringenti octoginta sestertii, *3,480 sesterces*.

Note.—Millia sestertium, is also used instead of sestertia.

(c) To express millions, the tens of the numeral adverb series (decies, vicies, etc.) are used with Centena millia sestertium, which, for the sake of convenience, is usually omitted: as,

Decies [centena millia] sestertium (for sestertiorum). *One million sesterces* (lit., *ten times one hundred thousand sesterces*).

Vicies [centena millia] sestertium. *Two million sesterces*.

Quadragies, etc. *Four million sesterces*.

Thus: Tu autem quadringenties sestertium, quod Idibus Martiis debuisti, quonam modo ante Kalendas Apriles debere desisti? *How did you cease to owe before the first of April, the forty millions of sesterces you owed on the Ides of March?*

(d) When a sum requires more than one numeral adverb to express it, the numerals must be added together if the larger stands first, but multiplied if the smaller stands first: as,

Millies quingenties sestertium. *One hundred and fifty millions*.

Ter vicies sestertium. *Six million sesterces* ($= 3 \times 20 \times 100,000$).

(e) The Gen. Pl. sestertium, used in expressing large sums, is sometimes treated as a neuter noun and declined: as,

Syngrapha sestertii centiens facta est. *A bond of 10,000,000 sesterces was drawn up.*

In vicies sestertio splendide se gessit. *He kept up great state on a fortune of two millions.*

Note.—Nummus (*a coin*) is frequently used instead of sestertius.

*Sestertius is derived from semis (*half*) and tertius (*third*), i.e., *the third a half* 2 $\frac{1}{2}$; hence it is often written H S (ii semis). It was originally worth 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ asses.

§ 48. ROMAN WEIGHTS AND MEASURES. INTEREST.

1. The word *As* was used to express any unit, and it was divided into twelve parts (*unciae*) to express twelfths of the unit.

The names of these divisions may be noted.

DIVISIONS OF THE AS.

As (the unit).

Deunx, gen.-*uncis* (*de-uncia* = *one ounce off*) = $\frac{1}{12}$.

Dextans, -*antis* (*de-sextans* = *a sixth off*) = $\frac{1}{20}$.

Dodrans, -*antis* (*de-quadrans* = *a fourth off*) = $\frac{1}{4}$.

Bes, *bessis* = $\frac{1}{12}$.

Septunx, -*uncis* (*septem-uncia*) = $\frac{7}{12}$.

Semis or *semissis*, gen. *semissis* (*semi-as*, *a half as*) = $\frac{1}{2}$.

Quincunx, -*uncis* (*quinque-uncia*) = $\frac{5}{12}$.

Triens, -*entis* (*tres*) = $\frac{4}{12}$.

Quadrans, -*antis* (*quattuor*) = $\frac{1}{4}$.

Sextans, -*antis* (*sex*) = $\frac{1}{6}$.

As = $\frac{1}{12}$.

4.—Of the above divisions, *semis*, *triens*, *quadrans*, and *as* were used as names of coins.

2.—Both *inch* and *ounce* are derived from *uncia*.

2. These divisions were used for dividing into twelfths any unit like *iugerum* (*an acre*), *pes*, (*a foot*), *libra* (*a pound*): *as*,

Arare semissem iugeri. *To plough half an acre.*

Obeliscus centum viginti quinque pedum et dodrantis. *An obelisk 125¼ feet high.*

Tres librae cum semisse. *3½ pounds.*

3. They were commonly used also in bequests: *as*,

Heres ex asse. *Heir to the whole estate.*

Heres ex sen. *Heir to half the estate.*

Heres ex uncia. *Heir to one-twelfth.*

4. The same divisions were used for reckoning interest (*usurae*, *tenus*), which was due monthly. Thus:

Asses usurae (*units interest*, i.e., *one a month for the use of a hundred*), *twelve per cent. per annum.* It was also called *centesimae usurae* (i.e., *the hundredth interest*), because in one hundred months a sum equal to the principal (*sors*) would have been paid.

The following table gives the Latin for Interest from 1 to 12%:

		% per annum.
Asses	} usurae	12
Deunces		11 (i.e., $\frac{1}{2}$ per month)
Dextantes		10
Dodrantēs		9
Besses		8
Septunces		7
Semisses		6
Quincunces		5
Trientes		4
Quadrantes		3
Sextantes		2
Unciae		1

So too: Binae centesimae, 24% per annum; ternae centesimae, 36% per annum, etc. Thus:

Pecuniam assibus usuris collocavit. *He invested money at 12%.*

Dodrantibus usuris grandem pecuniam apud eum collocavit.
He placed a large sum of money in his hands at 9%.

TABLE OF SYNTAX RULES.

(To be illustrated from the author read).

1. The direct object is in the Acc., the Indir. in the Dat.
2. A Rel. agrees with its antecedent in Gen., Number and Person; its case is determined by the verb of its own clause.
3. Verbs, of *making, choosing, calling, &c.* (factitives), take two accusatives.
4. Verbs of *teaching* and verbs of *asking* (except *peto, quaero*, and usually *postulo*) take two Accs.
5. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the Acc.
6. The Acc. is used in *exclamations*: as, O me miserum, wretch that I am!
7. The Acc. with Inf. is used as a noun, for an Eng. *that*-clause with *should*: as, Decorum est domos patere, *it is proper that our houses should stand open.*

8. The genitive is used to express the whole of which a part is taken (*partitive Gen.*).

9. The Gen. is used with *sum* to express *to belong to*, and to express *task, duty, mark, &c.*

10. The Gen. is used to express *quality*, and indefinite *price*.

11. The Gen. of source is used with certain verbs of *feeling* (*pudet, &c.*).

12. The Gen. is used with *refert* and *interest*, *it is of importance to*.

13. The Gen. of the charge is used with verbs of *accusing, condemning, &c.*

14. The Gen. is used with *admoneo* (*remind*), *memini*, *obliviscer*, *misereor*, *egeo*.

15. Adjs. followed in English by *of* (except *worthy of*) take the Gen.

16. Adjs. followed in English by *to* or *for* take the *dative*.

17. Many verbs take a Dat.: *as*, *parco* (*spare*), *credo* (*believe*), *pareo* (*obey*), *fido* (*trust*), *nubo* (*wed*), *studeo* (*be zealous for*), *obsto* (*stand in the way of*), *vaco* (*have leisure for*), *impero* (*command*), *suadeo* (*recommend*), *irascor* (*be angry with*), *subvenio* (*aid*), *ignosco* (*pardon*), *servio* (*serve*), *invideo* (*envy*), *indulgeo* (*indulge*), *placeo* (*please*), *displiceo* (*displease*), *repugno* (*oppose*), *occurro* (*meet*), *resisto* (*resist*), *faveo* (*favor*), *noceo* (*hurt*), *licet* (*it is allowed*), *libet* (*it pleases*), *minor* (*threaten*), *medeor* (*heal*), *consulo* (*consult for*).

18. Verbs compounded with certain prepositions take the Dat.

19. Verbs compounded with *male* and *satis*, take the Dat.

20. The verb *sum* used with the Dat. means *to belong to*.

21. Verbs meaning *to take away from* take the dat (*Tibi vitam adimo*).

22. A Dat. (*the dat. of purpose*) is used with certain verbs to denote purpose or object.

23. The Dat. is often used idiomatically for the Gen. (*Cui ad pedes se iecit*.)

24. The Abl. is used with *a* or *ab* to express the agent; but the Dat. is used with the Gerundive.

25. The Abl. is used to express *cause, manner, and instrument*.

26. The Abl. (*abl. of specification*) is used to express that *in respect to which* a thing is or is done: as, *Natura triquetra, triangular in form.*

27. The Abl. is used to express *measure of difference, separation, time, price, quality, and attendant circumstance.*

28. Certain transitive verbs take the Abl. instead of the Acc (*utor, &c.*)

29. *Opus est* takes Abl. of thing and Dat. of person.

30. Certain Adjs. are joined with the Abl.

31. A point of time and "time within which" are expressed by the Abl.

32. The comparative degree is often followed by the Abl.

33. The *case absolute* in Latin is the Abl.

34. *Place to which*, with the name of a town or small island, is expressed by the Acc.; with the name of a country, a preposition is used.

35. *Place from which*, with the name of a town or small island, is expressed by the Abl.; with the name of a country, a preposition is used.

36. *Place in which* (*place where*), with the name of a town or small island, takes the form of the Gen., if the noun is of the first or second Decl. Sing.; otherwise, of the Abl. With names of countries, a preposition is used.

37. To express *place where* with common nouns, a preposition is required, unless there is an Adj. with the noun: as, *In urbe, in the city*; but, *Hac urbe, in this city.*

38. Verbs of *saying, thinking, &c.*, take the Acc. with Inf. for the English noun-clause with *that*.

39. Verbs of *hoping* take a Fut. Inf.

40. Translate, *They said he was at Rome* by *Dixerunt eum Romae esse* or by *Dixerunt eum Romae fuisse*, according as the *actual words* used were, *Romae est* or *Romae fuit*.

41. The Inf. is often used for the Impf. in narration (*historic Inf.*)

42. Many verbs (*modal verbs*) take an Inf. after them to complete their meaning: as, *Audeo* (*dare*), *cogo* (*compel*), *conor* (*endeavor*), *constituo* and *statuo* (*determine*), *cunctor* (*hesitate*), *cupio* (*desire*), *debeo* (*ought*), *desino* (*cease*), *disco* (*learn*), *dubito* (*hesitate*), *incipio*

(*begin*), malo (*prefer*), nescio (*not know how*), nolo (*be unwilling*), obliviscor (*forget*), patior (*allow*), paro (*prepare*), possum (*be able*), scio (*know how*), soleo (*be accustomed*), vereor (*fear*), volo (*be willing*).

43. The supine is used to express purpose after a verb of motion.

44. To express nouns in *-ing* use the *gerundive*, if the verb governs the Acc.; if not, the *gerund*.

45. Duty and necessity (*must* and *ought*) are expressed by the *passive periphrastic conjugation*.

46. *Intention* is often expressed by the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

47. The *indirect question* (after *rogo*, &c.) has its verb in the Subjun.

48. Primary tenses are followed by primary, secondary by secondary (*Rule of Sequence*). This rule does not apply to *consecutive clauses*.

49. *Qui final*, *qui causal*, *qui consecutive*, and *qui concessive*, take the Subjun.

50. Verbs of *fearing* take *ne* or *ut* with the Subjun.

51. Verbs of *preventing* (except *prohibeo*) take *quominus* with the Subjun.

52. *Purpose* is not expressed in Latin by the Inf.

53. The Fut. Ind. and Pres. Subjun. are used in Fut. conditions; the Impf. and Plpf. Subjun. in conditions contrary to fact.

54. Dependent clauses in Indir. narration (or after another Subjun.) take the Subjun.

55. A Plpf. Subjun. in indirect narration represents a Fut.-pf. in a dependent clause in direct.

56. Imperatives of direct narration become Subjun. in Indirect.

57. Rhetorical questions in indirect are put in the Inf.

58. Verbs of *asking*, *ordering* (except *iubeo*), and *advising* take an Inf. in English, but *ut* with Subj. in Latin.

59. The Perf. Part. Act. is supplied in four ways.

60. Of two verbs connected by *and*, one often becomes a participle.

61. The English Pres. Part. is often expressed by the Perf. Part. or its equivalent.

62. English abstract nouns are often expressed by (a) the Inf.; (b) the Indirect question; (c) the Pres. Part.; (d) the Perf. Part.

63. The Latin Part. often represents an English finite clause.

64. *Without* joined to a noun in *-ing*, cannot be translated by *sine* with a Gerund.

65. The Fut. Subj. Act. is supplied by the Act. periphrastic conjugation, and the Fut. Subj. Pass. by *futurum sit ut*.

66. The Fut. Inf. of verbs that have no supine, is supplied by *fore ut*.

67. *Postquam* is joined with the Pf. for the Eng. Plpf.

68. *Priusquam* is usually joined with the Subjun.

69. *Cum* causal and *cum* with past tenses have the subjun.

70. *Dum, while*, takes the Ind.; *dum, until*, takes the Ind. of the past, the Subjun. of the Fut.; *dum, provided that*, takes the Subjun.

71. *Quin* with the Subjun. is used after verbs of negative notion (*non dubito quin, I do not doubt that*).

72. *Utinam, Oh! that*, takes the Pres. Subjun. of the Fut., the Impf. Subjun. of the Pres., and the Plpf. Subjun. of the past.

73. The subjun. is used in simple sentences in *wishes, commands, exhortation*, and *deliberative questions* and to soften an assertion.

74. A verb that governs the Dat. is not used personally in the Pass.

75. Intrans. verbs of motion prefer the Pass. (impers) to the Act.

76. An *ut*-clause is used to define a noun or pronoun.

77. A *quod*-clause often has the Subjun. (*virtual oblique*).

78. *Any* is *quis* after *si, nisi, ne, num, quo*, and *quanto*; *quisquam* (*ullus*) after a negative or virtual negative; and *quivis*, when it means *any at all*.

onju-

d by

f the

un.

otion

mpf.

ands,

the

Act.

quam

means

PART III.

LATIN AND ENGLISH IDIOM IN THE USE OF WORDS.

PART III.

LATIN AND ENGLISH IDIOM IN THE USE OF WORDS.

SECTION I.

1. If a paragraph be taken from an English author, it is rarely found that even a single sentence (unless it is in a very simple style) can be translated literally or word for word into Latin. This is due to the difference of the two languages in the use of words as a medium for the expression of thought. Latin Idiom in this respect is something quite as distinctive as Latin Accidence or Latin Syntax, and much more difficult to master.

Take, for example, the following passage (from an English historian of Rome) on the retirement of the Gauls after the great invasion:

"The retirement of the invaders requires no explanation. Sudden and violent onslaughts, which swept all before them, gave place to discouragement at anything like prolonged opposition."

It may be noted that: (a) There is no Latin word for "*retirement*," "*invaders*," "*explanation*," "*discouragement*," "*opposition*."

(b) The personification (so common in English) by which "*retirement*" is made the subject of the sentence is rare in Latin.

(c) The figurative use of words (as in "*sweep*") is rare and, as a usual thing, to be avoided in writing Latin.

By eliminating these characteristically English features (personification, metaphor, abstract nouns), using verbs for the verbal nouns, using the specific name *Galli* for "*invaders*," and changing the form of the narrative from third to first person, the passage at once approximates to the Latin form. Thus:

Neque enim est cur dicam quam ob rem Galli se receperint: quippe qui (*inasmuch as they*) repente et summa vi aggressi, cum diu resisteretur, animum demitterent.

Translation of English into Latin is mainly a process of simplification; it is, as it were, a fusing and recasting of the English, in order to put in another form or mould the meaning contained. Indeed when the thought of a passage is clearly grasped and expressed in its

simplest form (*re-thought*, as it were), Latin will often be found to be the natural form for the expression of the thought.

2. Practice in translating Latin into adequate idiomatic English, is therefore the best preparation for writing Latin.

"Most translations in our tongue," it has been said, "are dull and wearisome, because they do not assume a new form in passing through the translator's mind. The mere substitution of English for Latin words does not produce a translation, unless the sentences and constructions are English also."*

And so, conversely, the translation of English into Latin must adapt itself to the general characteristics of the Latin form of speech and the ideas expressed must assume a new dress as they pass through the translator's mind.

Some of the special characteristics of Latin Idiom may be illustrated in detail.

THE ABSTRACT NOUN

3. Latin, as compared with English, has few abstract nouns—a defect which is supplied in many ways. Thus :

USE OF THE INDIRECT QUESTION FOR AN ENGLISH NOUN

Latin often uses the indirect question where English uses an abstract or verbal noun: as,

Rogavit quot hostes essent. *He asked the number of the enemies.*

Scio cur redieris. *I know the reason of your return.*

Dicam tibi quo (whither) eamus. *I will tell you our destination.*

Quid de ea re sentiat exponet. *He will explain his view on the matter.*

Vides quale periculum sit. *You see the nature of the danger.*

EXERCISE I

1. I see the *suddenness* of the danger (use *quam*, how). 2. You tell the *source* of that rumor? 3. I have heard the *origin* of that custom. 4. You see the *character* of the man. 5. Let us ask the *date* of his departure. 6. Shall we ever know the *manner* of his death? 7. I did not know the *size* of the city. 8. Let us know that we may see the *issue* of the matter (use *evadere*, turn out). 9. One foresaw the *extent* of the danger. 10. They knew the *nature* of the danger.

* Pott's "Hints Towards Latin Composition."

his action. 11. The *motive* of his act is plain to all. 12. Tell me his *opinion* of the whole affair. 13. You know now the *manner* of his life from boyhood. 14. Have they discovered the enemy's *position*? 15. How shall we ever know the time, place, manner and agents in this crime? 16. Have they gone away to discover the size and character of the enemy's fleet? 17. Tell me the *compositions* of your daily life and I will tell you your own character.

SECTION 2.

THE LATIN VERB FOR AN ENGLISH NOUN.

1. The lack of abstract and verbal nouns in Latin is frequently supplied by a verb: as,

Id rogo. I make this request; idem promitto. I make the same promise; nihil respondet, he gives no answer; hoc gloriatur, he makes boasts.

Eadem peccat, he commits the same sins; nihil succenset, he feels no resentment.

Brutus sensit contra se iri. B. perceived that an attack was made upon him.

Maiora deliquerant quam quibus ignosci poterant. They committed crimes too serious to be pardoned.

Inde longissima prospectari poterat. Thence a distant prospect could be seen.

2. Verbs of motion, used impersonally in the Latin, supply the place where English uses a noun.

Pugnatum est, a battle was fought; clamatum est, a shout was raised.

Ad arma concurrunt, there is a rush to arms.

Infelicissime pugnatum est. A most disastrous battle was fought.

The five impersonal verbs (already discussed) that supply the simple emotions, are commonly used for the corresponding abstract nouns in English: as,

Huius rei eum poenituit. This thing filled him with remorse.

Me meae ignaviae piguit. I felt vexation at my own idleness.

4. The Latin infinitive will often supply the place of an abstract noun: as,

Humanum est errare. To err is human.

Liberius dicere mihi non licuit. *Greater freedom of speech was not allowed me.* So too: Beate vivere, *happiness* (also, beata vita); felicem esse, *good fortune* (lit., *to be lucky*).

5. The Pres. Part. Act., the Perf. Part. Pass., and the Gerund are very often found in Latin where English uses an abstract or verbal noun: as,

Mihi querenti, *to my complaint*; te repugnante, *in spite of your opposition*; indignantium voces, *expressions of indignation*.

Ab urbe condita. *From the foundation of the city.*

Propter classem amissam condemnatus est. *He was condemned for the loss of the fleet.*

Post expulsum filium. *After the expulsion of the son.*

Otiandi, non negotiandi, causa Syracusas se contulit. *He repaired to Syracuse for recreation not for business.*

6. A noun-clause introduced by quod (*the fact that*) will often take the place of an English noun: as,

Mihi gratum est quod venisti. *The fact of your coming is pleasing to me.*

Idcirco adfui quod ei subvenire volui. *The reason of my presence was my wish to aid him.*

Quod ei subveni mihi iucundum est. *The reflection that I aided him is delightful to me.*

7. An adverbial clause may frequently be used to turn an English abstract noun: as,

Hoc malum ut vitaret, abiit. *For the avoidance of this evil, he went away.*

Hoc accidit dum abfui. *This occurred in my absence.*

8. The Gen. is used with the verb sum, *I am*, to express words like *task, duty, custom, characteristic, mark, token*: as, Iudicis est sequi verum, *it is the duty of a judge to follow the truth* (lit., *to follow the truth is of, i.e., belongs to, a judge*); hoc est praeceptoris, *this is the business of an instructor*; sapientis est res adversas aequo animo ferre, *it is the characteristic of a wise man to bear adversity with resignation* (lit., *with an even mind*).

Hoc est evertendae rei publicae. *The tendency of this is the subversion of the constitution* (lit., *this belongs to*).

Note—With possessive pronouns, this genitive is not used, but the neuter of the corresponding possessive adjective: as, Tuum (not tui) est videre, *it is your duty to see*.

EXERCISE 2.

1. After the expulsion of the kings, consuls were elected. 2. He kept silence in your presence. 3. They contemned my threats. 4. I will go to Rome to have an interview with them. 5. Will he make a voyage in the middle of winter? 6. You should yield obedience to the laws. 7. There was a general rush to the walls of the city. 8. I believe that he feels regret for his conduct. 9. Every evil seems harmless at its birth (*nascor*). 10. After a brief exhortation, he induced them to remain. 11. They feel neither shame nor sorrow for their folly. 12. He never lost his belief in the existence of God. 13. The resistance ceased after midnight. 14. On arriving at the gate, they immediately demanded admittance. 15. Is it the mark of a mean mind to love wealth? 16. There is a possibility that his political opinions are the same as your own. 17. The murder of Pompey was a dreadful (*atrox*) crime. 18. What is your opinion of such people?

SECTION 3.

**OTHER SUBSTITUTES FOR THE ABSTRACT NOUN:
THE ADJECTIVE. CONCRETE FOR ABSTRACT.**

1. An adjective in Latin will often replace an English noun: as, *Hortos venales habuit. He had gardens for sale.*

So: *Tumultus servilis, a rising of the slaves; iter maritimum, a journey by sea; vir honestus, a man of honor.*

2. The neuter of an adjective (singular and plural) is most frequently used for an English noun: as,

Aliud est honestum, utile aliud. Honor is one thing; expediency, another.

Vera et falsa disiungunt. They distinguish truth and falsehood.

The neuter Adj. or pronoun is used in Latin to express an English noun for which the word *thing* might be used, but a more pretentious noun is preferred. Thus:

Haec sequebatur, he pursued these objects; magna ausus est, he ventured on great enterprises; hoc unum me consolatur, this one consideration (or reflection) affords me consolation.

Hoc audeo dicere. I venture to make this assertion.

Hoc mihi molestum est me non esse bonum civem. This thought is painful to me, that I am not a patriot.

Si modo haec stabunt. *If only the present condition of the country continues.*

Amissa erant per quae humus exciditur. *The tools for digging the earth had been lost.*

3. An English abstract noun may frequently be expressed by making it concrete, *i.e.*, referring it to an individual: as,

Nullum poetam legerat, nullum oratorem noverat. *He had read no poetry and was unacquainted with oratory.*

Plurimum interest inter doctum et rudem. *There is the greatest difference between learning and ignorance (lit., between a learned man and an ignorant man).*

Ingeniosi non sunt quales esse nobis videntur. *Genius is different from what we suppose it to be.*

A plural noun is frequently so used: as,

Legibus parendum est. *We should yield obedience to law.*

Fumenta propter frigora matura non erant. *The corn was not ripe owing to the cold.*

Assiduos inter labores vitam degunt. *They spend their lives in incessant labor.*

4. In accordance with this love of the concrete is:

(a) The use of the name of the nation instead of the name of a city or country: as, Atheniensis, *a man of Athens*; clades Cannensis, *the defeat of Cannae*; foedus Albanum, *the treaty of Alba*; duo Arpinates, *the two men of Arpinum*.

Romani cum Karthaginiensibus bellum iam diu gerunt. *Rome has long been making war upon Carthage.*

(b) The disregard of the use of titles: as,

Videsne tu, A. Corneli, cacumen illud? *Do you see that elevation, General?* (of a private soldier to his general).

Id nosmet ipsos facere oportet, Phaedria. *We must do it ourselves, sir* (of a slave to his master).

(c) The disregard of the use of impersonal forms of reference: as,

De hac re iam Servium, virum amplissimum, audistis. *With regard to this proposal, you have already heard an honorable member* (of a previous speaker in the Senate).

So: Legem tam utilem tolli, Quirites, non ferendum est. *The abrogation of so salutary a law, sir, is intolerable* (addressed to the members of the Assembly not, as with us, to the Speaker.)

Patres conscripti, *my Lords* (of the Senate); Iudices, *Gentlemen of the Jury*.

(d) The more direct use of proper names obtained by transferring the epithet to an appositive: as,

Cato meus, vir doctissimus. *My learned friend, Cato.*

So: Frater tuus, vir fortissimus. *Your gallant brother.*

(e) What may be called the "allusive use" of proper names: as, Tempora Numae minus apta. *A period of time little suited to Numa (i.e., irreligious).*

EXERCISE 3.

1. What object do you think, has he in view? 2. Some men pursue one object; some another. 3. Nor should men pursue ends they cannot attain. 4. He said that procrastination (*cunctor*) would be fatal (*funestus*). 5. He thought that flattery was wit (*adj.*). 6. I have already explained what I consider the qualifications of a general (*adj.*). 7. The secret of his unbroken success (*res succedit*) lay in his wisdom and foresight. 8. This is the advantage of vehemence and activity, that they soon learn to reform themselves. 9. Timidity, however, is more fatal. 10. A man once persuaded that an impediment is insuperable, has made it more difficult than before. 11. He will never discover the unreasonableness (use *vanus*) of his fears. 12. Tell him the hour at which we leave. 13. There was no longer any possibility of his escape. 14. All regard ingratitude with detestation (use *verb*). 15. The Roman loved oratory. 16. The betrayal of their plans threw them into confusion. 17. If I had made any proficiency in the art myself, I should not use these words. 18. Self-confidence (*inf.*) is a mark of arrogance. 19. It was a surprise to me that so wise a man as your father should have put confidence in their promises (say *that your father, a very wise man*). 20. He denied the possibility of their making war upon Rome. 21. He crossed the river when the cold was almost unbearable. 22. Their judgment with regard to him is correct (use *verb*).

SECTION 4

RES AND RES PUBLICA.

1. One of the commonest substitutes in Latin for the abstract noun is the word *Res*.

Thus in one page of Livy, taken almost at random, the following uses are found:

Quietae res ex Etruria nuntiabantur. *A peaceful condition of affairs in Etruria was announced.*

Omnibus conciliis eam rem agitari adferebatur. *Word was brought that this question was being debated at all their meetings.*

Tribunis iam diu nullam novandi res causam invenientibus. *As the tribunes had for a long time found no motive for agitation.*

Remotam a re publica iuventutem (esse dixit). *He said that the youth of the nation were kept aloof from all that was of national concern.*

Hiber. acula etiam, res nova militi Romano, aedificari coepta sunt. *Winter huts—a new departure for the Roman soldiery—began to be built.*

2. The genitive rerum is often added to nouns that are beginning to be used as abstracts: as, Causa rerum, *a cause*; cognito rerum, *study*; repugnantia rerum, *contradiction*.

Hoc est praecipue salubre in cognitione rerum. *There is this useful feature about study.*

3. Nothing can better illustrate the general character of Latin diction than the use of *res* in such cases as the above.

In its highest literary form, Latin approximates to the colloquial forms of modern speech.

4. The use, too, in Latin of the word Res publica (*the people's concern*) is suggestive. It should be written in two words and each word given its full force and translated to suit the context. Thus:

Sin autem vos plus tum in re p. vidistis. *But if you, on that occasion, showed more political insight (lit., saw more in regard to the people's interest).*

Sullam in Italiam res p. revocavit. *The political situation recalled Sulla to Italy.*

Cunctam rem p. rei tuae gestae amplexae sunt. *Your reforms have covered the whole field of political activity.*

Quid hunc hominem magnum aut amplum de re publica cogitare [putare possumus] qui pecuniam ex aerario depromptam . . . Romae in quaestu reliquerit? *What lofty or generous sentiments with regard to public duty can we suppose a governor to entertain who (when he goes out to his province), leaves behind him public funds withdrawn*

from the public treasury at interest (in his private account) at Rome?

Res publica may mean, according to the context, 'the country,' the nation, the constitution, politics, etc. Thus:

Hoc evertendae rei p. esse dixit. He said that this tended to the subversion of the constitution.

Contra rem p. Against the interests of the country (opposed to *e re p.*).

Rem p. bene (male) gerere. To administer public affairs successfully (unsuccessfully).

5. Res, as has been well said, is as it were a "blank cheque" the value of which is to be discovered and filled up from the context. Other examples of its use are: Ea res offendit animos populorum Etruriae. This proceeding (the election of a king) offended the peoples of Etruria (animos used in the Latin way to define the action of the verb more closely).

Ut res docuit. As the fact showed.

Multae res in philosophia non satis adhuc explicatae sunt. There are many problems in philosophy which have received as yet no adequate solution.

Bonis tuis rebus meas malas res ludis. In your prosperity, you are mocking my misfortune.

Compare too:

Res secundae (or prosperae), prosperity; res adversae, adversity; res tranquillae, tranquillity; res accisae, impaired fortunes; res novae, a revolution; res novare, attempt a revolution; res repetere, demand satisfaction.

EXERCISE 4.

1. I hope that you will manage this affair in a way that (*ut*) will be worthy of your distinguished father. 2. This affront the Romans resented bitterly (*aegre pati*). 3. So sudden was the attack that they at once withdrew. 4. That year the administration of affairs was a failure both in politics and in war (use *domi militiaeque*). 5. This incident however did not decrease their courage. 6. Have they told you how serious the danger to (*gen.*) their interests is? 7. Will you not devote yourself (*incumbo*) to the national cause? 8. Would you rather consider the men (*auctor*) or the measures? 9. I believe that the project will be postponed. 10. He has, I

believe, always deserved well of (*de*) his country. 11. The form of the constitution has often been changed. 12. This proceeding proved their salvation. 13. From these pursuits arises facility in speaking. 14. I have determined to relate the history of Rome from the foundation of the city. 15. Distrustful of their safety, they left the city. 16. You were wrong, not in your facts but in your dates (*tempus*) 17. Are you in any respect to be compared to him?

SECTION 5.

THE ABSTRACT NOUN (Continued): PERSONIFICATION, HENDIADYS.

1. Latin avoids the personification of an abstract idea and therefore an abstract noun used as the subject of a transitive verb is not common: as,

Virtute militum victoria parta est. The bravery of the soldiers won the day.

Metu subactus rem Romulo aperit. Fear made him disclose the facts to Romulus.

2. So too, the name of a mere *instrument*, as opposed to an *agent*, is not often the subject of a transitive verb: as,

Hac mercede adductus est ut portam aperiret. This bribe induced him to open the gate.

The poetical style of Livy, however, tends to disregard this principle: as,

Tristem hiemem gravis aestas excepit. A sickly summer followed a gloomy winter.

Pavor tribunos invaserat. Fear had seized the tribunes.

3. The abstract noun will of course be used in speaking of a quality *itself*, and (often) in ascribing a quality to an individual: as,

Virtus in recte agendo posita est. Virtue consists in right action.

In his artibus praestabant illi: probitate, industria, temperantia. In these qualities they were pre-eminent: uprightness, energy, and self-control.

But the severity and directness of Roman diction tends to replace the abstract noun by concrete forms of expression.

4. The following are remarkable differences of Latin idiom as compared with English in the use of the abstract noun:

(a) For an emphatic attribute Latin often uses an abstract noun: as,

In armis militum virtus et locorum opportunitas multum iuvant. *Valiant troops and strong defensive positions are important factors in military success* (lit., *goodness of positions*).

Cum antea nondum huius auctoritatem loci attingere auderem. *Since I did not as yet dare to set foot upon this time-honored spot.*

(b) Latin does not join an adjective or adjectival phrase to an abstract noun, but prefers to use two abstract nouns connected by et instead: as,

Res iuventute geruntur et viribus. *Business is transacted by youthful strength.*

Omnia vi et armis sublata sunt. *Everything has been taken away by force of arms.*

This is called *hendiadys*. It is a very common characteristic of Cicero's style: as,

Nihil est enim opere et manu factum quod non aliquando conficiat vetustas. *There is nothing made by the work of man's hands that time does not at last destroy.*

Insula Delos quo omnes undique cum mercibus atque oneribus commeabant. *The Island of Delos, to which all men resorted from every country with cargoes of merchandise.*

Publicani suas rationes et copias in illam provinciam contulerunt. *The Publicani have carried their money speculations to that Province* (lit., *their plans and their wealth*).

Other examples are:

Clamores et admirationes, *stormy applause*; clamor et admurmuratio, *loud murmuring*; non sine vociferatione et indignatione, *not without loudly-expressed indignation*; ratio et consilium, *rational judgment*; temeritas et casus, *blind chance*; metus et anxietas, *an anxious fear*.

Permissa est vulgo ultio et satietas. *The glutting of its revenge was allowed the mob.*

These are characteristic features of Latin diction and a striking exception to the usual idiom.

EXERCISE 5.

1. News of the rout of the army was received with cries of sorrow (*pari.*). 2. Under these circumstances, the Senate permitted

his return. 3. The result is (*efficio*) that man, if he obeys (*part.*) Nature, cannot injure man. 4. Natural shame (*hend.*) might have prevented him from being present. 5. They will always have a lively recollection of all his services to the country. 6. They have neglected the systematic study of literature. 7. All other philosophical systems he despised. 8. All these things were made by human handiwork (*hend.*). 9. They always differed in party policy. 10. An abundant variety of food has been secured (*invenio*). 11. These terrible threats of prosecution you should never have taken into account. 12. I had a thorough knowledge of his political views. 13. Fear and anxiety are inconsistent with such a disposition. 14. The introduction of the games did not relieve the State from superstition or disease. 15. Towards them, as Christians (*use cum, since*) great cruelty was shown (*use saevio*). 16. Shouts of congratulation were heard in every part. 17. In a charge of this nature, inquiry should be made as to date, place, means, and agents. 18. The historians tell us that human society was a late development. 19. The impossibility of his performing this promise prevented his return. 20. The superiority of the enemy disheartened our allies. 21. Men will not wait for slow-footed (*use tarditas*) opportunity, in order to kill you.

SECTION 6.

THE USE OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS IN LATIN.

1. One of the most striking features of Latin idiom is seen in the use of the Adjective. The common adjectives of quality in Latin are the simple generic adjectives like *magnus*, *parvus*, *amplus*, *tantus*, *ingens*, *summus*, etc. The constant use of descriptive epithets with nouns, and especially abstract nouns, is contrary to the genius of Latin diction: as,

Cepit magnum suae virtutis fructum. He reaped the rich reward of his distinguished merit.

Quod maius testimonium quaerimus? What more convincing testimony do we require?

Auctoritatem eius magnis vestris iudiciis amplificatam.... His prestige enhanced by the highly significant judgments you have passed upon him....

Tanta vis probitatis est ut eam vel in hoste diligamus. *So attractive is the power of integrity that we love it even in an enemy.*

2. The meaning and color of the adjective in the above examples is mainly drawn from the context. Frequently the descriptive epithet is omitted altogether: as,

Vultum atque aciem oculorum ferre nequibant. *They could not face their fierce looks and savage glances.*

3. Two adjectives qualifying one noun in Latin are connected by *et*: as,

Magnos et nitidos oculos habebat. *He had large bright eyes.*

4. An English prepositional phrase used as an adj. must be joined to its own noun by a participle or a relative clause: as,

Vox e templo missa (or quae e templo mittebatur) eos revocavit. *A voice from the temple recalled them.*

Vox e templo eos revocavit would mean *A voice recalled them from the temple.*

Note—Such an adjectival phrase may, however, be turned literally, if it can without ambiguity be joined adverbially to the verb: as, Levis eius animus in magnis rebus spectabatur. *His frivolity in great matters was noticed.*

5. An English adjective often expresses a reason or makes some distinct predication which must be brought out explicitly by a separate clause: as,

Navis, cum fracta esset, cursum tenere non potuit. *The shattered vessel could not hold her course.*

Haec res imperatorem nostrum, qui belli esset peritissimus, non fefellit. *This manœuvre did not escape our veteran leader.*

6. Where the emphatic verb in English is put in a relative clause, Latin demands that it should be made the main verb: as,

A fresh blow came that crushed the city. Clades nova urbem afflixit.

The sentence in English often begins with *It is, it was, etc.*: as, *It is you that I want.* Te volo.

THE ADVERB.

7. The use of the adverb in Latin is quite in accordance with the use of the adjective. Adverbs, except those expressing place and time, are few. This defect is supplied by:

(a) An adjective: as,

Hoc libens feci. *I did it gladly.*

Invitus haec dico. *I say it reluctantly.*

Imprudens erravi. *I have erred inadvertently.*

Eos vivus restituit. *He restored them during his life-time.*

So too: Iratus, *in anger*; metu perterritus, *in fear*.

Adversos, aversos aggredi. *To attack in front, in rear.*

(b) A noun : as,

Hoc consul fecit. *This he did in his consulship (as consul).*

So: Puer, *in his boyhood*; adulescens, *in his youth*; senex, *in his old age*.

Ratione et via docete. *Teach by method and system (=by a systematic method).*

Hoc memoria et litteris proditum est. *This has been handed down orally and in writing.*

So too: Arte factus, *artistically made*; vitio creatus, *informally elected*; natura tardior, *naturally rather slow*.

Amicitiam nec usu nec ratione cognitam habent. *They have known friendship neither practically nor theoretically.*

Ea, quae ex me audistis, re probare possitis. *May you be able to verify experimentally the principles you have heard from me!*

Plura verbo quam scriptura mandata dedimus. *We have given more commissions verbally than in writing.*

(c) A comparative adverbial clause: as,

Feci perinde ac debui. *I have acted honorably (in accordance with my duty).*

Poenas persolvit perinde ac meritis est. *He was punished rightfully (in accordance with his deserts).*

(d) A change of construction: as,

Abiisse videtur. *He is gone apparently.*

Dubitari non potest quin mortuus sit. *Undoubtedly he is dead.*

Peropportune accidit ut dives sit. *Very fortunately he is rich.*

Hoc cotidie facere soleo. *I usually do it every day.*

Manifestum est te errare. *You are manifestly wrong.*

(e) A verb: as,

Te oro obsecroque. *I solemnly entreat you*

Clamo et testor hoc falsum esse. *I loudly protest that it is false.*

Egi atque perfecti ut, quid vellem, facerem. *I managed successfully to effect my object.*

This last principle is of wide application and largely accounts for the doubling of synonyms so common in Cicero: as,

Vident et sentiunt, *they clearly see*; tueri et conservare, *to protect in safety*; expeto et postulo, *I urgently request*; velle et optare, *to fervently pray*.

Karthaginienses, homines in maritimis rebus exercitatissimos paratissimosque, vicerunt. *They won victories over Carthage, a nation trained to the highest pitch of efficiency in naval warfare (lit., most highly trained and most highly prepared).*

Haec fides atque haec ratio pecuniarum, quae in foro versatur, implicata est cum illis pecuniis Asiaticis et cohaeret. *The system of credit (hend.) in vogue in the Forum here, is indissolubly bound up with the payments that are made in Asia.*

EXERCISE 6.

1. He considered him the ablest general of whom he had ever read. 2. The opinion (*existimatio*) of the nation with regard to him was most flattering. 3. They report that they are men of giant stature. 4. Can we believe that he entertains any noble or generous sentiment? 5. They say that he was a man of commanding ability. 6. Such an influential man would have been elected at once. 7. I defended the country in my youth; I shall not desert it in my old age. 8. Such confident expectation of the successful administration of public affairs (*remp. gero*) was placed in him, that they made him consul. 9. We see that the attacks (*impetus*) of the enemy have been materially checked (use *retardo* and *reprimo*). 10. I was the last to perceive what he was aiming at. 11. The war by his arrival was reduced to comparative insignificance (use *attenuo* and *imminuo*). 12. In their youth they ventured on many a glorious enterprise. 13. In the pursuit of noble ends, they will endure every hardship. 14. Indicate a motive for this detestable crime. 15. He saw that there was no possibility of retreating. 16. Their detestation of the monarch himself was even more inveterate than their detestation of the monarchical principle (*regnum*). 17. So deep was Roman resentment that annihilation was evidently in store for the vanquished nation.

SECTION 7.

LATIN IDIOM (Continued). MODERN POLITICAL TERMS.

1. A relative clause may be used to turn an English noun in *-er* or *-or*, expressing an *agent*: as,

Qui patrem meum interfecerunt. *My father's murderers.*

Qui videbant ea, flebant. *The spectators wept.*

Note—Nouns in *-tor* or *-sor* (expressing an *agent*), are common in Latin; but the relative clause in this sense is usual.

2. The verb *sum* will often take the place of a more emphatic or picturesque verb in English: as,

Per castra indignatio ingens erat. *Intense indignation reigned in the camp.*

Ex hoc est falsa opinio. *From this a false opinion results.*

3. Latin, in its love of the concrete, defines an act much more closely than English: as,

Corpora cibo curant. *They refresh themselves with food.*

Haec animos pavore levabant. *These proceedings relieved them from their fear.*

4. From the Latin love of the direct and concrete arises the constant use of the 2nd Pers. Sing. and of the 1st and 3rd Pers. Pl., for the English passive or for the indefinite subject (*one, people, etc.*): as,

Hoc verum esse, si velis temporum memoriam replicare, reperies. *The truth of this will be found, if the pages of history are turned over.*

Nascimur ingeniosi, fimus eruditi. *People are born with genius, but are made learned.*

Note—Several consecutive nouns in Latin in the same construction are written down one after the other without conjunctions: as,

Illa arma centuriones cohortes non nobis periculum denuntiant. *Those arms, officers, and battallions do not threaten us with danger.* This is called *asyndeton*.

So, too, clauses: as, Redit iuvenis, rem narrat, implorat opem. *The youth returns, tells his story, and begs for aid.*

5. English political and scientific terms for which Latin has no equivalent, often present difficulty in translating into Latin.

A short list of such words, with a suggested translation, is added:

Scelerum socius, *accomplice*.

Nobiles, *aristocracy*.

Quod cuique tributum est, *assessment*.

Qui deos esse negat, *atheist*.

Exulta hominum vita, *civilization*.

Aequatio bonorum, *communism*.

Qui rei publicae statum conservat, *conservative*.

Turbulenti cives or populi turbatores, *demagogues*.

Ardor animi *enthusiasm*.

Res quae exportantur, *exports*.

Dissentire de deorum cultu a ceteris civibus, *heterodoxy*.

Rerum scriptor, *historian*.

Divinus quidam afflatus, *inspiration*.

Qui leges ponit, *lawgiver*.

Quae de moribus et officiis praecepta sunt, *moral philosophy*.

Studium rei publicae, *patriotism*.

Qui in re publica versatur, *politician*.

So: Ad rem p. accedere, *enter political life*; rem p. gubernare, *administer the government*.

Falsae atque inveteratae opiniones, *prejudices*.

Oratio soluta, *prose*.

Rhetorum praecepta, *rhetoric*.

Rei p. regendae et constituendae peritia, *statesmanship*.

Unius dominatus, *tyranny*.

EXERCISE 7.

1. War, disease, and famine threatened them simultaneously.
2. In those days a better fashion was in vogue.
3. Both besiegers and besieged were seized with a sudden panic.
4. Confusion (*trepidatio*) prevailed on every side.
5. There was no way of distinguishing friends and strangers (*use 2nd pers.*).
6. He was able to endure cold, thirst, and hunger.
7. Are our own statesmen less able than those who lived in former times?
8. He announced that the measure was both practicable and expedient (*use verbs*).
9. He was abler than any of his predecessors upon the throne.
10. Do not tell me that he was angry with the bystanders.
11. He was much embarrassed (*confusus*) when he began to speak.
12. Open flattery all men hate.
13. The disappointed soldiers began to murmur.
14. Firmness and dignity are consistent with true courage.
15. He has

lost all the vigor of youth? 16. You are all familiar with his political career. 17. He preferred a government which was monarchical rather than democratic (*use penes, in the hands of*). 18. By appeals to prejudice (*invidia*) and acrimonious attacks upon his private character, they easily prevented his reappointment.

SECTION 8.

**METAPHOR. WORDS WITH TWO OR MORE MEANINGS.
ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN.**

1. In no respect does English idiom differ more from that of Latin than in the use of Metaphor. In Latin the use of metaphor is rare; in English, it is so common that it is used unconsciously. Thus.

Id ei occurrit. The thought struck him.

Regnum a maioribus traditum excepit. He ascended the throne of his fathers.

Sui similis brevi fuit. He soon showed himself in his true colors.

Rei publicae impendere multa pericula videntur. The political horizon seems overcast with clouds.

In translating English into Latin, metaphor should, as a usual thing, be dropped.

2. A metaphor may however be sometimes turned into Latin by expanding it into a simile. Thus, in the last example: *Ut nubes mari saepe, ita rei publicae pericula nunc impendent.*

3. The words *quasi* (*as if*), *tamquam*, *velut*, *quidam*, *ut ita dicam*, &c., are used to apologise for, or introduce, a figurative or unusual word: as,

E corpore, quasi e carcere, evolat animus. The soul flies forth from the prison-house of the body.

Philosophia omnium artium quasi parens erat. Philosophy was the mother of all the arts.

4. Roman metaphor is chiefly drawn from war, agriculture, navigation, the stage, the human body, building, fire, light. Thus:

Rem publicam gubernat. He holds the helm of state (i.e., administers the government.).

Partes (or personam) lenitatis agite. Take the rôle of leniency.

In tanto rei publicae incendio sisti non potest. In the midst of such public confusion, it can not be helped.

Sometimes Roman metaphors do not seem in accordance with the genius of the English language: as,

In medullis populi Romani et visceribus haerent. *They are enshrined in the affections of Rome* (lit., marrow and flesh).

5. Many English words are equivocal (*i.e.*, have two or more meanings), and, in translating into Latin, these meanings must be distinguished, if necessary even with the aid of the English dictionary. Thus,

Vir est summa fide. *He is a man of honor.*

Ille est patriae decori (*i.e.*, ornament). *He is an honor to his country.*

Dignus est summis populi Romani honoribus. *He is worthy of the highest honors in the gift of the people* (*i.e.*, office, political distinction).

Laudem ei tribuunt. *They pay him honor.*

Sitit famam (gloriam or laudem). *He thirsts for honor.*

So, too: Pro patria mori. *To die for one's country.*

Rus homines eunt (*i.e.*, as opposed to the city). *People go into the country.*

De rei publicae salute perturbatur. *He is disturbed for the safety of his country* (*i.e.*, the political community).

Cum summo civium gaudio rediit. *He returned, to the great joy of his country* (*i.e.*, countrymen).

In eorum fines iter faciam. *I will march into their country.*

6. English words of Latin origin differ usually in meaning from the Latin original.

Thus: Summum honorem (or magistratum) consecutus est. *He obtained the highest office* (obtineo = *hold*; officium = *duty*).

Sulla dictator pauperes vexabat. *Sulla, as dictator, oppressed the poor* (opprimo = *crush or surprise*).

Useful examples are:

Acquire (adipiscor, consequor,) act (facio), alien (externus), attain to (pervenio ad), barbarous (cruel), cease (desino or desisto), class (genus), commonly (saepe), crime (scelus), crown (*i.e.*, kingdom, regnum), desire (cupio), expose to (obicio), famous (praeclarus), fatal (perniciosus), fathers (maiores), fury (ira), heart (animus, indoles), heaven, (deus, di immortales,) injury (damnum), mortal (of a wound, mortiferum), nation (civitas, res publica), be obnoxious (odio esse), provoke (animum irritare), ruin (perniciēs, interitus), scene (locus or ubi.)

secure (tutus), *triumph* (vinco), *urge* (agere cum . . ut), *vile* (turpis), *world* (omnes or homines), *universe* (mundus), *study* (cognitio).

EXERCISE 8.

Translate, without metaphor:

1. I lent him the support of my influence (*auctoritas*) in the House (use *adiuvo*). 2. He was overwhelmed by the tide of business. 3. Does not the moon revolve round the world? 4. Was not he world made by design? 5. If he had consulted the interests of the country, he would have been dear to the country. 6. Rome was mistress of the whole world. 7. I am afraid I shall never see him again in this world. 8. All this district he won with the sword. 9. The love of money is the root of all evil. 10. He has held the sceptre for more than thirty years. 11. The voice of warning was drowned in shouts of admiration. 12. He drew a broad line between honor and self-interest. 13. That older world stood nearer to the dawn and saw truth with clearer eyes. 14. The enemy was reduced to submission without difficulty. 15. Their exasperation will be proportionate to the good nature with which they now proceed. 16. Disaster now stared them in the face (*impendeo*). 17. This reverse damped their triumph. 18. The Forum would have been the stage for his genius. 19. The House assigned me this rôle, and I sustained the character to the best of my ability. 20. Defeat after defeat was inflicted upon the enemy by our generals, but there always remained the ember from which the flame of rebellion could be rekindled.

SECTION 9.

ORDER, EMPHASIS, AND RHYTHM.

ORDER.

1. Conjunctions, relative and interrogative pronouns, relative and interrogative adverbs, usually stand first in their own clauses: as—

Quae cum ita sint, about. *Under these circumstances*, let him depart.

2. The following words never begin a sentence: *Quis* (any), *quisque* (each), *quoque* (also), *quidem* (at least, indeed), *vero* or *autem* (but), *enim* (for), *igitur* (therefore).

3. The usual order of words in a Latin sentence is as follows: (1) Subject; (2) adverbs of time, place and manner; (3) indirect object; (4) direct object; (5) verb: as,

Caesar enim illo die ei coronam dedit. *For that day Caesar gave him a crown.*

EMPHASIS.

4. The practice of indicating emphasis by position, modifies the regular arrangement and lends character and variety to the style: as,

Non video in mea vita quid despiciere possit Antonius. *I do not see in my career what any man can despise of the name of Antony* (subject made emphatic by being put last instead of first).

So, too, the verb is emphasised by being put not last, but first: as,

Irridet Clodius Senatum. *Clodius is actually mocking the Senate.*

Pecunia a patre exacta est crudeliter. *The money was extorted from his father with every circumstance of cruelty* (adverb at the end for emphasis).

In miseriam nascimur sempiternam. *We are born to misery everlasting* (adjective last, for emphasis).

Profluens quiddam habuit Carbo et canorum. *Carbo had the gift not only of a flowing but of a musical style* (adj. last and separated from the word with which it would naturally go).

Note,—The use of the emphatic position renders many words, that are common in English, unnecessary in Latin. Thus:

Illius rei non mentionem faciam. *I should not mention that affair at all.*

Hoc non prius credam quam audiero legatos. *That I shall not believe till I actually hear the envoys.*

SPECIAL RULES OF ORDER.

5. The following are special rules of order (See Potts' *Hints Towards Latin Prose*):

(a) Everything logically connected with the subject should be placed close to it: as,

Duo Numidæ cum litteris ad Hannibalem missi sunt. *Two Numidians were sent to Hannibal with a letter* (here the letter belongs to the Numidians).

Democritus, luminibus amissis, alba et atra discernere non poterat. *Democritus could not distinguish black from white after he had lost his sight.*

(b) A sentence should not, as a usual thing, have more verbs at the end than two: as,

Verres Siciliam ita vexavit ut in antiquum statum nullo modo restitui potuerit. *Verres so harried Sicily that it could not possibly be restored to its former condition* (the main verb of a final or consecutive sentence is not put at the end).

Dixit se intelligere id agi ut aliquid falsi dicere cogeretur (the verb introducing oblique narration put, as usual, first). *He said he saw that this was the aim, i.e., that the man might be compelled to say something false*

So, too:

Ferunt eum incredibili memoria fuisse. *They say that he had an incredible memory.*

(c) The verb of an explanatory clause introduced by *enim* or *autem*, stands first: as,

Quae res unquam gesta est tanta? Licet enim mihi apud te gloriari. *What such brilliant achievement has ever been performed? For I may boast before you.*

(d) A colorless verb (like *esse*, *solere*, *posse*, *coepisse*, &c.) stands usually in the middle of a sentence: as,

Hi solent esse utiles. *These people are usually of service.*

Sum, however, comes first in the sentence (1) when it means *to exist*, (2) to prevent the separation of closely connected words: as,

Est igitur haec lex. *This law, therefore, exists.*

Erat nemo quicum essem libentius. *There was none with whom I would more gladly be.*

(e) Words of opposite meaning, words of the same sound or derivation, and different cases of the same word, are usually written together for the sake of the contrast and the assonance: as,

Omnia unus Romae facere poterat. *In his single hand he controlled everything at Rome.*

Mortali immortalitatem non arbitror contemnendam. *I do not think immortality should be despised by a mortal.*

Nihil aliud quaerere debetis nisi uter utri insidias fecerit. *You should not ask any question but which of the two waylaid the other.*

(f) Two words in antithesis are often found, one at the beginning, the other at the end: as,

Errare malo cum Platone, quam cum istis vera sentire. *I prefer rather to be wrong with Plato than to be right with those gentry.*

(g) When pairs of words are contrasted, the order of the words in the second pair is reversed: as,

Audires ululatus feminarum, virorum clamores. *You would have heard the shrieking of women and the shouting of men.*

Note.—This arrangement is called chiasmus (from the Greek letter *chi*, X). Thus:

ululatus feminarum,
X
virorum clamores.

(h) Adjectives and attributive genitives (except those of possession, number, and amount) usually follow their nouns: as,

Civis Romanus sum. *I am a Roman citizen.*

Princeps Senatus. *The leader of the Senate.*

Two nouns belonging to a genitive are not separated, unless for emphasis: as,

Huius orationis difficilior est exitum quam principium invenire. *It is more difficult to find the beginning of this speech than the end.*

(i) The negative should come as near the head of the sentence as possible: as,

Neque ipsi Lacedaemonii poterant. *Even the Lacedaemonians were unable.*

Non erit melius vocem misisse. *You will find it better not to have uttered a sound* (inf., when used as a noun, usually at the end).

RHYTHM.

6. The Latin writers paid particular attention to Rhythm (or the due alternation of short and long syllables). The favorite ending was the Cretic. Thus:

Ad miseriam nascimur sempiternam. *We are born to misery that is unending.*

Patris dictum sapiens filii temeritas probavit. *The wise remark of the father was verified by the rashness of the son.*

A sentence should not close with the ending of a hexameter verse (e.g., *case videtur*)

The occasional memorisation of a sentence from Livy or Cicero will soon produce a sense of the common combinations.

EXERCISE 9.

1. When he was living there with great dignity owing to his many virtues, the Spartans sent ambassadors to him at Athens. 2. They deny that anyone should live who acknowledges himself guilty of homicide. 3. He felt that he was being taken to task (*reprehendo*) even by Brutus. 4. With what feelings do you think a man like Alexander lived? 5. Till to-day you have followed another general now follow Caesar. 6. On this charge he was condemned, a charge of the most frivolous character. 7. Do not sacrifice (*posthabeo*) the safety of your country to the safety of your father. 8. I was unable to visit him; he lives in a remote part of the city. 9. Prosperity cannot be secured without zealous effort. 10. He was a man undoubtedly worthy of all honor. 11. To think that men should eat human flesh! 12. It is glorious to die for one's country. 13. He used to say that silver was cheaper than gold, gold than virtues. 14. Danger comes to one from one quarter, to another from another (use *aliunde*). 15. My thoughts are at present employed (*cogito*) in guessing the reason of your absence. 16. I am distressed at not receiving any information from you by letter. 17. I am now coming to the point at issue (use *ago*). 18. They were bound to him by friendship of long standing. 19. A man of wonderful eloquence and profound learning, he did not escape condemnation.

SECTION 10.

THE LATIN PERIOD. CONNECTION.

The Latin writers were fond of putting forward some prominent idea and grouping into one organic and harmonious whole (called a *period*) all connected ideas. This period they used with great skill and developed to a high degree of perfection.

Modern English style has taken quite a different direction: Every sentence contains, as a usual thing, a single idea with which the subordinate clauses (always very few and simple) are intimately connected.

To arrange the scattered fragments of an English paragraph into a Latin period, when the meaning of the passage is clearly seen, and

to recast it in the more direct and simple form of Latin speech, presents little difficulty. A few general remarks may be of value:

1. Latin usually shows the logical connection of each sentence with the preceding; and, in turning English into Latin, this connection must usually be expressed. Thus:

Horatius was marching in advance. His sister met him before the gate. Princeps Horatius ibat; cui soror obvia ante portam fuit (cui = et ei, and him).

It was too late for him to regain public esteem. He had overlooked the threatening danger. Nec iam (by this) potuit studium populi recuperare. Non enim intellexerat (pick up) quae pericula sibi impenderent (enim, to connect).

Your whole charge is that I do not entertain a bad opinion of you. Omne autem tuum crimen est, quod de te non male existimem (autem, to continue the narrative; adversative).

2. The most common of all Latin connectives is the relative pronoun. Thus:

Twice two is four. If this is granted, &c. Bis bina quattuor; quod si concessum erit, &c.

Note 1.—The relative is often used for *and* with a demonstrative; hence the frequent use in Latin of *quamobrem*, *quare*, *quam ob causam* (and on account of this thing, &c).

Note 2.—When the antecedent is emphatic, the relative pronoun is put forward in the sentence: as,

Most people are servile to a man from whom they expect something. Plerique a quo aliquid sperant, ei (or eidem) inserviunt.

3. The subject of the main verb is often to be supplied in Latin from the relative clause: as,

When this word was brought him, he arose. Cui cum id esset nuntiatum, surrexit.

So, too: *There are books with which, when we have read them we are delighted.* Libri sunt, quos cum legimus, delectamur.

4. For the sake of clearness and emphasis, a word is often repeated at the head of each clause of a sentence: as,

The panic and confusion were as great as if an enemy were besieging the city. Tantus pavor, tanta trepidatio fuit, quanta si testes urbem obsiderent.

He promised but with difficulty, with frowns, and grudgingly. Promisit sed difficulter, sed subductis superciliis, sed malignis (niggard) verbis.

This is called *anaphora*.

5. The subject of a Latin sentence should be kept—as far as possible—unchanged all through the sentence: as,

The matter was quickly dispatched and the legions returned. Quae re confecta, legiones redierunt.

When his friends asked him his opinion, he replied as follows. Ille, sententiam ab amicis rogatus, ita respondit.

N. B. The use of short coordinate sentences in English necessitates the repetition of the subject under different forms. In Latin the subject when once mentioned, is not again referred to except by a pronoun. In fact, when any idea has been once clearly stated, it is not repeated.

6. The subject should be taken out of a subordinate clause and put at the head of the sentence: as,

When Caesar heard this, he set out. Caesar, cum hoc audiisset, profectus est.

If the subject is changed, it should be expressed by the pronoun *is* or *hic*, when the new subject has been already mentioned in the previous sentence: as,

They came to the king at Pergamum. He received them kindly. Pergamum ad regem venerunt. Is eos comiter excepit.

7. The same noun or pronoun should—as far as possible—be kept in the same case all through the sentence: as,

When Midas was a boy, some ants piled grains of corn upon his lips, when he was asleep. Midas dormienti cum puer esset, formicae in os tritici grana congesserunt.

Note.—This will often involve the use of a subordinate clause (or a participial phrase) for an English main clause: as, *Hannibal ordered him to leave the camp, but he soon returned.* Qui, cum Hannibalis iussu e castris exiisset, paulo post rediit.

This he persistently repeated and his whole discourse was spent in eulogizing virtue. Quibus constanter dictis, omnis eius oratio in virtute laudanda consumebatur.

8. A noun when the object both of the main and of the subordinate clause, is put at the head of the sentence: as,

If I cannot crush my annoyance, I will conceal it. Dolorem, si non potero frangere, occultabo.

And, generally speaking, the important word is to be taken and put at the head of the Latin sentence, in order that the subject of discourse may be emphatically and clearly indicated in advance. as,

When they saw that he had escaped the flames, they hurled darts at him and killed him. Quem, ut incendium effugisse viderunt, telis emissis, interfecerunt.

Note.—This will often involve a change of voice (as in the last example) or the use of a pronoun in a subordinate clause: as,

When Hannibal was living in exile at the court of King Prusias, and was of the opinion that the war should be fought out to the end, the king refused. Rex Prusias, cum Hannibali apud se exulanti depugnari placeret, id facere noluit.

EXERCISE 10.

1. For several days storms followed and they kept us within our camp. 2. Which wealth—if it fell to our lot—we would be dissatisfied with. 3. Desires which arise naturally, are satisfied without difficulty. 4. When Hannibal had reviewed (*recenseo*) his troops, he set out for Gades. 5. After Alexander had killed his friend, he almost died of sorrow. 6. Do you believe that the mind is strengthened by pleasure and weakened by abstinence? 7. There is no doubt that force would have been repelled by force. 8. The matter was universally approved of, and it was entrusted to the general. 9. When the Cretans sent ambassadors to him, he did not take away all hope from them. 10. If the occasion (say *time*) be favorable for the change, we shall effect it with more ease. 11. The augur Tiresias (*put the appositive second*) is described (use *finjo*) by the poets as a philosopher, and he is never represented as bewailing his blindness. 12. By the common consent of the competitors, he won the prize for valor, but resigned it to Alcibiades, whom he devotedly loved. 13. Had Croesus been a happy man, he would have prolonged his happiness to the end. 14. Tattius corrupted this man's daughter with gold. She had happened to go outside of the ramparts to seek water. 15. This was observed and they altered their plan. 16. He had taken the city and the troops were marched home. 17. Such was my view and, if the Senate had supported me,

the country would be safe. 18. Heaven will requite you in accordance with your deserts. 19. He was tired of his journey and so his slave killed him. 20. This is a kindness which, if you confer it upon me, I shall not forget. 21. They felt more sorrow for the loss of their countrymen than joy at the rout of the enemy. 22. As soon as the enemy saw us, they made a charge, and we were quickly thrown into confusion.

SECTION II.

EXAMPLES OF LATIN TRANSLATION.

The application of the principles and suggestions made in the preceding sections may now be briefly illustrated in translating English into Latin.

(a) ENGLISH PASSAGE.

So widely had disloyalty spread in Latium, that even some of the citizens of Tusculum, long closely connected with Rome, were found among the prisoners of war made from the Volscian army, and they brought the fidelity of the town into such suspicion that Camillus marched an army against it. A speedy submission, however, and a humble embassy to the Senate averted any actual severity.

REMARKS.

1. The natural subject is Tusculani (people of Tusculum).
 2. The personification in "*disloyalty*," "*fidelity*," "*submission*," should not be preserved.
 3. The metaphor in "*spread*" should be dropped. Say: '*So many nations revolting*.'
 4. "*Bring into suspicion*" = in suspicionem adducere.
- Cf. "*To be suspected*," in suspicionem venire; "*to be forgotten*," in oblivionem venire.

TRANSLATION.

Tusculani vero quidam inter captivos Volscos inventi, civitatem suam iam diu foedere cum Romanis coniunctam in tantam suspicionem adduxerunt, ne (tot populis Latinis deficientibus) deficeret et

ipsa, ut Camillus in eam exercitum duxerit: in quam civitatem, deditione propere facta supplicique legatione ad Senatum missa, nihil tamen saevitum est.

(b) ENGLISH PASSAGE.

The extension of the Roman territory in the course of these wars is marked by the formation of four new tribes. The ten years of comparative peace abroad which followed, were occupied at Rome by the struggle over the Licinian proposals; and during that time, owing to the interruption in the election of the magistrates, the state was scarcely in a position to act with vigor.

REMARKS.

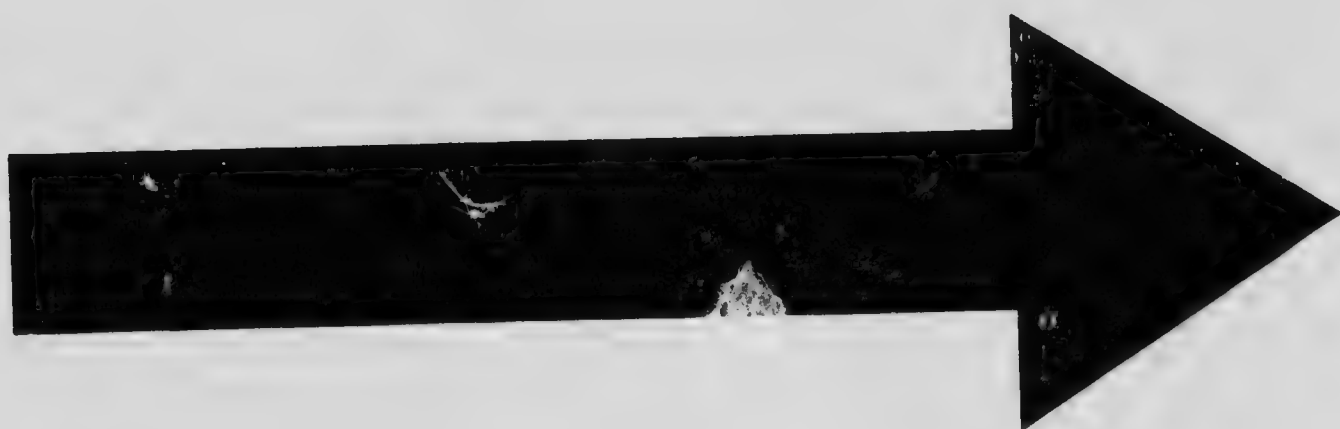
1. The natural subject is *Romani*, which need not be repeated at "*state*."
2. The personification in "*extension*" and "*years*" should not be retained.
3. The abstracts "*course*," "*formation*," etc., are made concrete.
4. "*Comparative*" = as a general thing = *fere*.

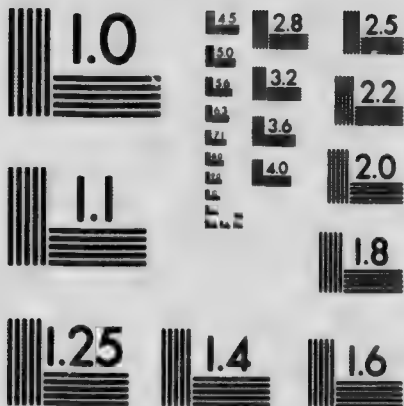
TRANSLATION.

Romani autem quattuor tribus, agro inter haec bella aucto, addiderunt; sed decem sequentibus annis quamquam externae res quietae fere erant, cum de rogationibus Licinii certaretur comitiaque differrentur, strenue contra hostes agere non poterant.

(c) ENGLISH PASSAGE.

When Regulus reached Rome, he refused, as being no longer a citizen, either to enter the city or visit his wife and children. The Senate met outside the walls; but, instead of pleading the cause for which he was sent, he urged the Senators by no means to make peace or accept an exchange of prisoners. And this advice the veteran gave, although he knew that death awaited him at Carthage, reminding his hearers that, though military law had consigned to Carthage the possession of his body, his spirit was still Roman.





MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART
NATIONAL BUREAU OF STANDARDS
STANDARD REFERENCE MATERIAL 1010a
(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)

REMARKS.

1. The subject is taken out and put at the head of the sentence. It is not repeated at "*veteran*."
2. "*Reminding his hearers*," signal for indirect: part of a speech.
3. "*Law*," not to be personified.
4. "*Consigned*" etc., expressed literally.

TRANSLATION.

Regulus, cum Roman venisset, vel urbem intrare vel uxorem liberosque visere, ut non iam civis, nolebat atque Senatui extra muros convocato suasit neve pacem faceret neve mutationem captivorum acciperet; et ea hortatus est quanquam se Karthagini perituum cognoverat: corpus enim suum iure belli esse Karthaginensium, animum vero adhuc Romanum.

LIMIT OF SUBORDINATION. THE DETACHED STYLE.

It may be observed in conclusion that, though Latin prefers the complex sentence to the compound and subordination to cöordination, over-cöordination should be avoided, as tending to obscure the clearness of the narrative. The subordination of three, or at most four, statements to the main predication, is suggested as the limit. The difficulty disappears with practice and especially before a thorough mastery of the meaning of the English.

For the sake of variety, the detached style is combined with the long Latin periods. It is used, as in English, in graphic, rapid, and detailed description, and, especially in speeches, for dramatic effect. Thus:

Palatinum muniit; sacra dis aliis facit. *He fortified the Palatine and instituted rites in honor of the other gods.*

Bellum ab altero consule prospere gestum; Suessa in deditionem venit, Teanum vi expugnatum. *The military operations of the other consul were successful; Suessa surrendered and Teanum was taken by storm.*

Quid porro quaerendum est? Factumne sit? At constat, A quo? At paret. *But what is the subject of investigation? The fact (of the homicide)? That is admitted. The author of it? But that is clear.*

cence.

beech.

korem
extra
capti-
peri-
inien-

YLE.

rs the
ordin-
obscure
or at
as the
before

ith the
rapid.
amatic

Palatine

tionem
e other
s taken

at, A
The fact
but that

PART IV.

SIMPLE NARRATIVE FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.

PART IV.

SIMPLE NARRATIVE FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN

1. With ten thousand men Caesar sailed from Portus Itius, to where he saw the white cliffs of Britain shining over the waters. The Britons saw the enemy coming, and drew themselves up on the shore to prevent them from landing. Whenever the Romans tried to leave their ships, the brave islanders showered stones at them with such fury that the soldiers began to despair of ever being able to get to shore. At last a Roman standard-bearer jumped into the sea, calling on the soldiers to follow him, and not allow their flag to be taken by the enemy. Fired by his brave example the Romans dashed after him, and at last succeeded in getting to land.

2. The victory was long doubtful. The wing commanded by Decius was giving way before the terrible onset of the Gauls, when he determined to imitate the example of his father, and to devote himself and the enemy to destruction. His death gave fresh courage to his men, and Fabius gained a complete and decisive victory. Gellius Egnatius, the Samnite general, who had taken the most active part in forming the coalition, was slain. But, though the League was thus broken up, the Samnites continued the struggle for five years longer. During this period C. Pontius, who had defeated the Romans at the Caudine Forks, again appeared, after twenty-seven years, as the leader of the Samnites, but was defeated by Q. Fabius Maximus with great loss and taken prisoner. Being carried to Rome, he was put to death as the triumphal car of the victor ascended the Capitol. This shameful act has been justly branded as one of the greatest stains on the Roman annals.

3. This battle taught Pyrrhus the difficulty of the enterprise he had undertaken. Before the engagement, when he saw the Romans forming their line as they crossed the river, he said to his officers: "In war, at any rate, these barbarians are not barbarous;" and afterward, as he saw the Roman dead lying upon the field with all their wounds in front, he exclaimed, "If these were my soldiers, or if I were their general, we should conquer the world." And, though his loss had been inferior to that of the Romans, still so large a number

of his officers and best troops had fallen, that he said, "Another such victory, and I must return to Epirus alone." He therefore resolved to avail himself of this victory to conclude, if possible, an advantageous peace.

4. Three days afterwards information reached him that the enemy were advancing with a formidable force upon Vesontio and were already three days' march beyond their frontiers. It was of the utmost importance to prevent this place from falling into their hands and he saw that it was necessary to use every precaution. The town was not only well supplied with military stores but strongly fortified by nature and, if once secured by the Germans, certain to be strongly held in order to protract the campaign. The place is encircled by a river which encloses almost the whole town, while the intervening space is filled up by a mountain extending on both sides to the banks. A wall, surrounding the mountain, gives it the strength of a citadel and joins it to the town. Caesar made a hurried advance and, by great good fortune arriving before the Germans, took possession of the place and fortified it.

5. Brutus, being defeated by Antony near Philippi, betook himself to flight to avoid falling into the hands of the enemy. One Licinius, observing a few horsemen pursuing him at full speed, threw himself in their way in order to save the life of his general, telling them that he was Brutus. The horsemen, overjoyed at the news, gave over the pursuit, and despatched messengers to tell Antony that Brutus was taken. Antony, when he received the intelligence, was at a loss how to treat the illustrious captive. But he was soon delivered from his uneasiness, for Licinius shortly afterwards came up and confessed who he was. In the meantime Brutus made his escape.

6. Fortune in another quarter served the Romans no less effectually. The Macedonian ambassadors, after having concluded their treaty with Hannibal, made their way back into Bruttium in safety and embarked to return to Greece. But their ship was taken, off the Calabrian coast, by the Roman squadron on that station, and the ambassadors with all their papers were sent prisoners to Rome. A vessel which had been of their company, escaped the Romans and informed the king what had happened. He was obliged therefore to send a second embassy to Hannibal, as the former treaty had

Quo modo

never reached him; and, although this second mission went and returned safely, yet the loss of time was irreparable, and nothing could be done until another year.

7. There was a certain slave named Androcles, who was so ill-treated by his master that his life became unsupportable. Finding no remedy for what he suffered, he at length said to himself, "It is better to die than to continue to live in such hardships and misery as I am obliged to suffer. I am determined, therefore, to run away from my master. If I am taken again, I know that I shall be punished with a cruel death; but it is better to die at once than to live in misery. If I escape, I must betake myself to deserts and woods, inhabited only by wild beasts; but they cannot use me more cruelly than I have been used by my fellow creatures. Therefore I will rather trust myself with them than continue to be a miserable slave." Having formed this resolution, he took an opportunity of leaving his master's house, and hid himself in a thick forest, which was at some miles' distance from the city. But here the unhappy man found that he had only escaped from one kind of misery to experience another.

8. Confident that he could reduce the Aequians in a single battle, the Roman general immediately advanced with a large army which he drew up in fighting order on the plain. Thither the enemy also advanced as soon as it was light. The battle was a spirited one, but the Romans were in the end victorious and drove the Aequians back to their camp. This engagement compelled on the part of the enemy the admission that the Romans were their superiors in the art of fighting pitched battles, and they now resorted to predatory incursions. In this guerilla warfare they were eminently successful, and spread consternation even to the gates of Rome.

9. Famine had now reached such a pitch that the besieged had actually begun to eat the leather of their shields, when the Gauls declared their willingness to accept a money payment as the price of evacuating the city. Their host was melting away with disease and they had received the intelligence that the Venetians, taking advantage of the absence of the fighting men, had invaded Gallic territory. They believed too that the Roman garrison had no lack of food. It was agreed accordingly that the Gauls should receive a thousand pounds of gold, provided they withdrew with all their forces from the territory of Rome. At the weighing of the gold, the

5
3
2
3
4

Gallic chief had false weights brought and when the Romans exclaimed against the injustice, he threw his sword and belt into the scale. Hence the words, "*Woe to the vanquished*," were long remembered at Rome.

10. In the very year after the establishment of Military Tribunes, two new officers of state, called Censors, were appointed. These were both Patricians. Their business was to hold the Census, and perform the solemn rites with which every lustrum, or period of five years, was initiated; and their office was to last for the whole of this period. In later times the Censors obtained a very great and commanding power, and became the chief and crowning dignity which a Roman burgess could reach. But it cannot be doubted that the cause of their creation was to take out of the hands of the Military Tribunes some of the most important functions attaching to the office of consul. But in the year 434 B.C. L. Æmilius Mamercus, himself, a Patrician and a man of highest distinction, introduced a change. He was in that year invested with the office of Dictator, for the purpose of conducting the war in Lower Etruria. His services were not required in the field, but he brought in a law by which the Censors were allowed eighteen months for the purpose of executing their business, and then were required to lay down their office; so that if Censors were elected for each lustrum, there would be three years and a half in each of these quinquennial periods during which there were no Censors.

11. This victory seemed to Pyrrhus to confer little or no advantage; for his loss had been very heavy and his hope of the arrival of reinforcements from Epirus was very slight. Therefore, when envoys came to him from Sicily with a request for aid against Carthage, they found him inclined to accept their proposal. Rome, too, was not unwilling to facilitate the withdrawal of so formidable a foe, and, when one of the king's slaves brought a message to the consuls, offering to remove his royal master by poison, they sent the traitor back to the king with the announcement that the Romans scorned to vanquish their enemies by treachery.

12. He spoke as follows: "Many evils may lurk under the name of freedom, and men, ensnared by the sweetness of this name, have done acts which were worthy of death. This is what your magistrates are doing now. You have allowed them perfect freedom of speech and, instead of tribunes of the people, they now show them-

elves the abettors of sedition. What would you say that a man deserved who himself deserted his post or recommended such a course to another? What would you say a man deserved who disobeyed his general or recommended disobedience to others? Would you not say that he deserved to die? But this is nothing in comparison to what your tribunes have done and are now doing. They have no respect for our ancestors or for the institutions of our ancestors; they refuse to obey the law of the land; they are seducing the soldiery; they are betraying the country. I ask you how long you intend to permit them to follow these seditious courses."

13. The Senate felt great regret at the military failure before Veii and were as much exasperated as the plebs at the defeat of the army and the destruction of the siege works by fire. They accordingly passed a decree ordering all the magistrates to abdicate at once and a new election to be held. Some opposition was offered to the execution of this decree on the part of those concerned; but when one of the senators threatened to compel by force the abdication ordered by the Senate, all opposition ceased. Magistrates were then elected at the popular assembly, and came into office not on the 1st of January, which was the regular and usual day for entering office, but upon October 1st. The delinquent generals of the previous year were then brought to trial and condemned by the people to pay a large fine (*multa*) for incompetence in their command and treason to their country.

14. No sooner had the Gauls heard this, than they sent word to their kinsfolk, and, being reinforced by great multitudes, took the road to Rome. In the meanwhile the Roman allies had mustered at the Senate's call and everyone who could bear arms was supplied with them. It is clear that the whole of the Roman force took up a position near Veii to watch the enemy's movements, as was the case in A.U.C. 421 when an irruption of the same people was apprehended. For our narrative relates that the Roman army crossed the Tiber and marched along its banks to the Allia; and that the generals had received sudden intelligence that the enemy were advancing by forced marches upon the city and were already close at hand. They hoped to prevent him from ravaging the country before it. If they had only refrained from indulging in such a hope! A battle lost under the walls of the city need not necessarily have involved its destruction.

15. Day dawned; the main army broke up from its camp, and began to enter the defile, while the natives, finding their positions occupied by the enemy, at first looked on quietly, and offered no disturbance to the march. But when they saw the long narrow line of the Carthaginian army winding along the steep mountain side, and the cavalry and baggage-cattle struggling at every step with the difficulties of the road, the temptation to plunder was too strong to be resisted; and from many points of the mountain, above the road, they rushed down upon the Carthaginians. The confusion was terrible: for the road or track was so narrow, that the least crowd or disorder pushed the heavily-loaded baggage-cattle down the steep below; and the horses, wounded by the barbarians' missiles, and plunging about wildly in their pain and terror, increased the mischief.

16. Their march often lay through deep valleys or under ridges upon which the brave mountaineers had taken up their position. These latter attacked the column in front and rear, both hand to hand and with missiles; they even rolled down rocks upon it from the hills. Again, it often lay along defiles with precipices on both sides, from which men and horses and beasts of burden continually fell. The woods, echoing with the discordant shouts of the natives, increased the confusion and alarm. They had some experience, too, of treachery. One day at dawn some venerable-looking chieftains met them and offered them guides. These were accepted at once. But a number of armed men had been posted on a height that overhung the road, and there is no doubt that, if the army had not advanced in fighting order, it would have been brought to destruction.

17. On the morning of the fatal day, M. Brutus and C. Cassius appeared, according to custom, in the Forum, sitting in their prætorian tribunals, to hear and determine causes. There, though they had daggers under their gowns, they sat with the same calmness, as if they had nothing upon their minds; till the news of Cæsar's coming out to the senate called them away to the performance of their part in the tragical act, which they executed, at last, with such resolution, that through their eagerness to stab Cæsar, they wounded even one another.

18. There were other members of the party who were not prepared to wait and the leadership of this section seemed open to the man

who should be able to grasp it. Such a man was found in L. Sergius Catiline. An aristocrat by birth, he could only hope to gratify his wishes by the attainment of office, and he could only hope to attain office by service rendered to one of the great parties in the State. Earlier in life he is found in the Sullan party, and some of its worst excesses, the death of his own brother and that of Gratidianus by torture, were attributed to him. Since then, he was said to have removed wife and son by poison, to make room for a new wife. Such stories, however, circulated as they were by his political opponents, should not find too easy credence.

19. The struggle was over (*use desino*). Cæsar had ceased to breathe, and for a moment the eyes of his assassins encountered each other across his body. When they looked around them, the hall was already vacant. The senators had fled with precipitation; centurions, lictors, and attendants, who had accompanied the dictator within the precincts of the curia, had vanished from the scene, and the harangue which Brutus was about to utter commanded no listeners. Antonius, whose detention at the door gave him the fairest opportunity of escape, had slipped through the crowd, exchanged clothes with a slave, and made his way unperceived to his house in the Carinæ. *Fly, shut your doors, fly!* was the cry of the panic stricken senators; for none could tell where the next blow of the assassins might fall, or what movement their deed might excite among the murdered man's adherents.

20. He presses them, therefore, to turn their whole care upon the state; that it was not a Gracchus, who was now in judgment before them, but traitors, whose design it was to destroy the city by fire and the senate and people by massacre; who had solicited the Gauls, and the very slaves, to join with them in their treason, of which they had all been convicted by letters and their own confessions. That the senate, by several previous acts, had already condemned them: by their public thanks to him; by deposing Lentulus from his prætorship; by committing them to custody; by decreeing a thanksgiving; by rewarding the witnesses; but, as if nothing had yet been done, he resolved to propose to them anew the question both of the fact and the punishment; that, whatever they intended to do, it must be determined before night: for the mischief was spread wider than they imagined; it had not only infected Italy, but crossed the Alps, and seized the provinces: that it was not to be suppressed by delay and irresolution, but by quick and vigorous measures.

21 On the news of Antony's retreat, Cicero presently quitted his books and the country, and set out towards Rome: he seemed to be called by the voice of the people to take the reins once more into his hands. The field was now open to him; there was not a consul and scarcely a prætor in the city, or any troops from which he could apprehend danger. He arrived on the ninth of December, and immediately conferred with Pansa (for Hirtius lay very ill), about the measures proper to be taken on their approaching entrance into the consulship.

22. At Tarentum too the people were not in any hurry about the war, and a party of peace were for negotiating (*use ago*); since the Romans, notwithstanding their distance, were already a menace to the Tarentines, and had been preparing for the war against them for several years, by the establishment of fortified places. The opinion that Pyrrhus should be invited gained the upper hand. The fact that this plan was adopted without hesitation, can be explained only by the general enthusiasm for Pyrrhus: the Athenians even had invited him, with his guard, to offer up sacrifices on the Acropolis. Pyrrhus received pressing invitations from the Samnites, Lucanians and Tarentines; and we may add without hesitation, that all those nations offered him the supreme command.

23. Pontius was so elated by his success at the Caudine Forks, that he knew not what would be the best use to make of his victory; so he sent for his father Herennius and asked him what he thought should be done. On hearing that the Roman army was shut up between two wooded hills, the old man said that they ought either to be all put to the sword, in order that their strength might be broken, or allowed to go uninjured, so that they might be won over by their enemies' kindness. But neither piece of advice was accepted. Finally terms were granted on condition that all the prisoners should pass under the yoke. The consuls were obliged to give up their armour and cloaks, and were the first to undergo the disgrace.

24. The confirmation of Caesar's *acta* by the Senate gave Antony an opportunity of securing enormous powers, and soon made it plain the rejoicing on the part of the Optimates was premature. It was left to the consuls to decide what these *acta* were— with the help indeed of a committee (*consilium*), which seems, however, not to have met,—and Antony, who had got Caesar's papers from his widow, was able to carry on the administration unchecked. He con-

ciliated Lepidus by allowing his election as pontifex maximus, and Dolabella by allowing him to take the consulship; he obtained the disposal of a vast sum of money deposited by Caesar in the temple of Ops; and he was encouraged to ignore all opposition by the evidence of popular feeling in his favor.

25. Meanwhile another actor appeared upon the scene. This was young Octavius. He had been but six months in the camp at Apollonia: but in that short time he had formed a close friendship with M. Agrippa, a young man of his own age, who possessed great abilities for military life, but could not boast of any distinguished ancestry. As soon as the news of his uncle's assassination reached the camp, his friend Agrippa recommended him to appeal to the troops and march upon Rome. But the youth, with a wariness beyond his years, resisted these bold counsels. Landing near Brundisium almost alone, he there first heard that Caesar's will had been published, and that he was declared Caesar's heir. He at once accepted the dangerous honor. As he travelled slowly towards the city, he stayed some days at Puteoli with his mother Atia, who was now married to L. Philippus. Both mother and stepfather attempted to dissuade him from claiming his inheritance. At the same time he had an interview with Cicero, who had quitted Rome in despair after the Funeral, and he left the Orator under the impression that he might be won to what was deemed the patriotic party.

26. When the gods had been chased away from Greece and their realms were being divided among mortals, a certain man obtained Parnassus as his share and made use of it as a pasturage for asses. Now the asses found out, some way or other, that the Muses used to live there, and they proceeded to make the following observations: "It was not for nothing that we were turned loose on Parnassus. No doubt the fact is that the world is tired of the Muses and it wants us to sing to it. Surely we shall make our race illustrious, forming our own choir and lifting up our voices in louder music than the Nine Sisters ever produced. And in order that no injury may be done to our fraternity, we will establish among ourselves the regulation that no individual shall be admitted to Parnassus whose voice is deficient in the true asinine charm."

27. The letter which the Consuls sent to King Pyrrhus on this occasion was to the following effect: "The Roman consuls send greeting to King Pyrrhus. For injuries received we intend to offer

you the most determined opposition in the field, and in order at last to conquer you in the field and also as a proof of the honorable character of the people of Rome, we are anxious that your life should be preserved. Your most intimate friend has demanded a reward from us for compassing your death. This offer we have rejected with scorn. At the same time we judge it proper to send you this information, that we may be acquitted at the bar of the other nations of the earth, of having instigated the crime. Take heed or you will perish."

28. The enemy was foiled in his first attempt and immediately altered his plans. He abandoned all idea of a siege and proceeded to blockade the place. A strong garrison was stationed on the neighboring hill and a camp was pitched on the level ground on the banks of the river. To enable him to ferry over troops at different points as occasion offered and at the same time to prevent supplies of corn from being carried up the river for the use of the besieged, a large fleet was got together and the only fortress on the other side of the river, still defended, was easily captured. An officer, who happened to be stationed with a handful of men on the bridge, had witnessed the capture of the fort by the invaders, and now saw them descending the hill at full speed. Knowing that, if he deserted his post, they would immediately cross the river, he solemnly implored his countrymen to destroy the bridge with fire and steel. Thereupon he advanced to meet the enemy and maintained his position with a handful of men until warned, by the shouts of those who were toiling in his rear, that they had accomplished their object.

29. Porsena now proceeded to lay siege to the city which soon began to suffer from famine. Thereupon a young Roman named Mucius, resolved to deliver his country by murdering the invading king. He accordingly went over to the Etruscan camp; but, ignorant of the king's person, he killed the royal secretary instead of the king. Seized and threatened with torture, he thrust his right hand into the fire of an altar blazing near-by, to show his enemy how little he regarded pain. One of the hostages given to the king was a noble maiden of the name of Cloelia. This young lady, eluding the sentries, escaped from the royal camp, which was pitched at no great distance from the river, and, swimming across the stream, returned to her home. Ambassadors were at once sent by the enemy to demand her surrender and to say that the king would regard a refusal

as a virtual violation of the peace. The hostage was accordingly restored; but the king, filled with admiration of the exploit, sent her back in safety to her friends.

30. There was a Roman law which ordered the officers of the people to be elected by the votes of the people, and forbade magistrates to be appointed by the votes of their own body. In violation of the law, the Senate at the elections for the following year secured (*efficio*) the appointment of two of the people's tribunes. This proceeding was regarded by the Commons as an outrage and their indignation was excessive. In order to weaken the force of their indignation, three members of the College of Tribunes laid information against the two generals who had been defeated the previous year in the neighbourhood of Veii, and sought to stir up the Commons against them. "You have now," they said, "power to take vengeance upon the guilty pair who have brought sorrow into your homes and ignominy upon the country."

31. Pausanias relates in his book on Attica that the Athenians having been praised by Pindar in a song, valued so highly the testimony of that sublime poet that they sent him numerous gifts on that account and set up his statue in the city. It is not therefore wonderful if in those days there were many excellent poets, since those who excelled in that art were rewarded with the greatest gifts and the highest honors. In our age the once harmonious choir of the Muses is reduced to silence and the avarice which has closed the purses of the rich, has dammed up the streams of the waters of Helicon. Another writer tells us that for commending the city of Athens, Pindar was fined by his countrymen, who were displeased because he bestowed commendation upon foreigners rather than upon his own. When the Athenians learned this, they sent double the sum that had been exacted as a fine, and honored him with a brazen statue.

32. Semiramis is said to have gained a throne from a very low rank of life by an exceedingly clever ruse. She had by degrees obtained such influence over king Ninus, that nothing was so great that she would not dare to ask it of the king, or that the king would venture to refuse her, if she did ask it. So having once thrown out in conversation that there was something that she desired very much and the king having told her to name it openly and fearlessly, whatever it might be: "I should wish you," she said, "to grant me

this favor, that I might sit on your throne and administer justice for a single day and that all should obey me just as they do you."

33. The king laughed and granted her what she requested. Immediately it is proclaimed that on an appointed day all men should obey the commands of Semiramis; that such was the king's pleasure; that for that day she was placed over them all with sovereign authority and power. When the day arrived, the queen sat on the throne in royal pomp. Vast crowds assemble before her. She at first issues some commands of no great importance. When she saw that all men obeyed her in earnest, whatever she commanded, she orders the royal body-guard to arrest the king himself; they arrest him. To bind him in chains; he is bound. To put him to death; he is put to death. In this manner her reign of a day is made perpetual. This is the queen who surrounded Babylon with walls of brick and whose famous hanging gardens were the object of such universal admiration among the nations of the ancient world.

34. On one of our officers being ordered out, the Rajah assured him that in attacking our cantonments (*castra*) he had not acted on his own will or judgment, but under compulsion from his people; that, though nominally commander, his authority over his soldiers was hardly equal to that which they exercised over himself. He was not, he added, so ignorant as to believe that his forces could defy the power of England; but he had found it impossible to resist the general rising of his nation. Now that he had discharged the duties of a patriot, he earnestly warned the general to save himself and his soldiers. He offered his solemn oath to guide them in safety through his own territory to the next cantonments.

35. The rights of the commons in this country are not highly regarded. The common people are found in the army and are not exempt from military service; but they are not admitted to the council of the nation. They pay taxes and are almost crushed by them; but if they venture on any enterprise on their own responsibility, they are considered to have committed a crime. A noble has nearly the same power over them that a master has over his slaves. They have therefore been in the habit, from time immemorial, of joining themselves to some of the greatest of the nobles that they may not be altogether without assistance. When they are loaded with debt, they are often made over to him like slaves. When a dispute arises between the commons and the nobility, it is decided by the nobility;

and, if the commons do not submit, they are excluded from the religious functions of the nation.

36. Reaching the lake at sundown, they pitched their camp at the very mouth of the pass, and next day entered the defile. They saw some of the enemy in front of them, but they did not know that others had taken up their position in the rear and overhead; and that, in fact, they were completely surrounded. A thick mist from the lake now settled down upon the pass. Between the hills and the lake is a narrow plain, and on this the line was drawn up; but before a shout arose or a sword was drawn, the enemy began to advance in even order upon them. At the same time, fighting began on both flanks where the enemy's horse had taken up their position. The general, in view of the danger, showed considerable resolution, and encouraged the troops to stand their ground; but the word of command was drowned by the shouts of panic; and so thick was the mist that the soldier could not see which way to turn. Some writers state that an earthquake occurred at the same time as the battle; but, if it did (*use fio*), such was the din and confusion that few of the combatants observed it.

37. Both Marius and Sulla served as lieutenants to the consuls in this war, and commanded separate armies in separate parts of Italy. But Marius performed nothing in it answerable to his great name and former glory; his advanced age had increased his caution. After so many triumphs and consulships, he was fearful of a reverse of fortune. So that he kept himself wholly on the defensive and like Fabius of old, chose to tire out the enemy by declining a battle, content with snatching some little advantage that opportunity threw into his hands, without suffering the enemy, however, to gain any against him. Sulla, on the other hand, was ever active and enterprising. He had not yet obtained the consulship, and was fighting for it, as it were, in the sight of his fellow citizens, so that he was constantly urging the enemy to a battle, glad of every occasion to display his military talents and eclipse the fame of Marius.

38. Common danger makes common foes, and the Senate determined to support the Etruscans against the barbarians. All they did however was to send three ambassadors to warn the Gauls not to meddle further with the affairs of Clusium, for Clusium was an ally of Rome. The barbarians took slight notice of the message and continued the war. Now it chanced that a battle was fought before

the city while the three Roman ambassadors were still at Clusium; these envoys, forgetting the peaceful character of their mission, took part with the Clusines against the Gauls. Thereupon the barbarians, in fierce resentment, demanded to be led straightway against the city whose sons were so faithless; but their chiefs restrained them, and sent an embassy to Rome, demanding that the envoys should be surrendered.

39. In acknowledgment of the capture of Veii, the senate ordained a public thanksgiving (*supplicatio*) of longer duration than had ever before been ordered. The dictator had vowed a tenth part of the spoil to the Pythian Apollo. It was resolved to make a golden bowl equal in value to this tenth. To defray the expense, a tax would have had to be levied by the government, but to relieve them of the necessity for this, the women of Rome freely surrendered their gold ornaments for the purpose—a highly meritorious act for which they were rewarded by the senate with the privilege of riding in carriages through the city, a right which men enjoyed only during the term of their offices. A ship of war, with three envoys on board, was despatched to carry the offering to Delphi; but it was captured by the Liparaeans and taken to Liparae.

40. The Grecian fleet, as we have seen, had stayed among the Cyclades, to punish the islanders who had aided the barbarians. Themistocles seized the opportunity of enriching himself at their expense. He first demanded a contribution from Andrus; and when the Andrians refused it, he told them that the Athenians had brought two powerful gods to second their demand, Persuasion and Force. The Andrians replied that they also had a pair of ill-conditioned gods, who would not leave their island, nor let them comply with the will of the Athenians, Poverty and Inability (*Impotentia*). The Greeks laid siege to Andrus; but it made so vigorous a defence, that they were at length compelled to abandon the attempt and return to Salamis.

41. Notwithstanding the almost insuperable difficulties of this voyage, he persevered in his course with his usual patience and firmness; but he made so little headway that he was three months without seeing land. At length his provisions began to fail; the crew was reduced to the scanty allowance of six ounces of bread a day to each person. The admiral fared no better than the meanest sailor. But even in this extreme distress, he retained the humanity which distinguished his character, and refused to comply with the

earnest solicitations of his crew, some of whom proposed to feed upon the Indian prisoners whom they were carrying over, while others insisted on throwing them overboard, in order to lessen the consumption of their small stock.

42. Soon the whole route was blocked with snow and the advance of the column was extremely slow. Despair appeared on every face, but difficulty and hardship only served to signalize the splendid military qualities of the commander. The whole army was exhausted with fighting and the toil of road-making (use *munio*), but they had at last reached the summit of the Alps, and now Italy was almost in sight. A rest of two days was allowed to recruit, and the camp was pitched upon the top of the ridge. During these two days, he drew up the army on a height which commanded a distant view, and pointed out the level plains of Italy, stretching beneath the mountains. "These mountains," he said, "are the ramparts of Italy; when they are once scaled, the Roman citadel will soon be in our hands."

43. The gift of pay in return for military service was welcome to the army, but not equally welcome to the tribunes of the people. "You will find," they said, "that this gift of the Senate's, like the robe (*palla*) of Nessus, is steeped in poison. If you banish yourselves, from your homes in this way, you will not be able to elect magistrates or to institute reforms. In fact the liberty of the Commons of Rome has been sold for money. You have accepted pay for your service in the field and, in return for that, you will be considered the slaves of the Senate. Who can tell how long you will have to remain in the field? Who can tell when you will be allowed to visit your homes? Such slavery as this was never known in the country, even under the rule of dictator and decemvir."

44. This prince had already been deprived by Cæsar of part of his dominions for his adherence to Pompey, and was now in danger of losing the rest, from an accusation preferred against him by his grandson of a design alleged to have been formed by him against Cæsar's life. The charge was groundless and ridiculous; but, under his present disgrace, any charge was sufficient to ruin him; and Cæsar's countenancing it, so far as to receive and hear it, shewed a strong prejudice against the king, and that he wanted only a pretence for stripping him of all that remained to him.

45. The Romans treated Mithridates with unexampled injustice. They first took from him Phrygia, because their attention had been

directed to the importance of that state. This he never forgot. Then they endeavoured to injure him otherwise in every possible way, and to limit his power more and more. Under these circumstances he grew up thirsting for revenge. During the Cimbrian war, the Romans had no time to keep their eyes on him. He was a man of great mind, and, having now grown to the age of manhood, he formed a profound plan of revenge. He first tried to strengthen his kingdom. He carried on wars on the Bosphorus and there subdued all the nations as far as the Don. His general built fortresses there. His whole plan was directed against Rome; and had he been a contemporary of Hannibal, it is very probable that Rome would have been crushed. If he had only ruled another people than Asiatics, the destruction of Rome would have been possible.

46. On the 9th of December, when the flight of Catiline was known, Cicero delivered his second speech, which was addressed to the people in the forum. The Senate proceeded to declare Catiline and Manlius public enemies, and decreed that Antonius should go forth to the war while Cicero should remain to guard the city. Cicero was anxious to obtain other evidence, which would justify him in apprehending the conspirators within the walls. This was fortunately supplied by the ambassadors of the Allobroges, who were now at Rome, having been sent to seek relief from certain real or alleged grievances. Their suit, however, had not prospered and Lentulus conceiving that their discontent might be made available for his own purposes, opened a negotiation with them and disclosed to them the nature of the plot.

47. But they thought it more prudent to reveal all to Q. Fabius Sanga, the patron of their State, who in his turn acquainted Cicero. By the instructions of the latter, the ambassadors affected great zeal in the undertaking and obtained a written agreement signed by Lentulus, Cethegus and others. They quitted Rome soon after midnight on the 3rd of December, accompanied by one T. Volturcius, who was charged with despatches for Catiline. The ambassadors were seized, as they were crossing the Mulvian bridge, by two of the praetors, who had been stationed in ambush to intercept them. Cicero instantly summoned Lentulus, Cethegus, and the other conspirators to his presence. Lentulus being praetor, the consul led him by the hand to the temple of Concord, where the Senate was already met; the rest of the accused followed, closely guarded. Vol-

turcius, finding escape impossible, agreed, upon his own personal safety being insured, to make a full confession.

48. If he had imprisoned and punished him at this time as he deserved, the whole faction were prepared to raise a clamour against him, by representing his administration as a tyranny, and the plot as a forgery contrived to support it. By driving Catiline into rebellion, he made all men see the reality of their danger; while, from an exact account of his troops, he knew them to be so unequal to those of the state, that there was no doubt of his being destroyed, if he could be pushed to the necessity of declaring his intentions, before his other projects were ripe for execution. He knew, also, that if Catiline was once driven out of the city and separated from his accomplices, they would ruin themselves by their own rashness, and be easily drawn into any trap which he should lay for them.

49. Antony left Rome about the end of September, in order to meet and bring over to his service four legions from Macedonia, which had been sent thither by Cæsar on their way towards Parthia, and were now, by his orders, returning to Italy. He thought himself sure of them, and by their help to be master of the city; but, on his arrival at Brundisium on the eighth of October, three of the legions to his great surprise, rejected all his offers, and refused to follow him. This affront so enraged him, that, calling together all the centurions, whom he suspected to be the authors of their disaffection, he ordered them to be massacred in his own lodgings, to the number of three hundred, while he and his wife Fulvia stood calmly looking on, to satiate their cruel revenge by the blood of these brave men.

50. The Senate met again the next day, when Antony thought fit to absent himself, and leave the stage clear to Cicero. Cicero accordingly appeared, and delivered the first of those speeches, which as being imitations of the speeches of Demosthenes, were called afterwards his *Philippics*. He opens his speech with an account of the motives of his late voyage and sudden return; of his interview with Brutus, and his regret at leaving him. "At Velia," he says, "I saw Brutus: with what grief I saw him, I need not tell you; I could not but think it scandalous for me to return to a city, from which he was forced to retire, and to find myself safe in any place, where he could not be so; yet Brutus was not half so much moved by it as I, but, supported by the consciousness of his noble act, shewed not the least concern for his own case."